

INDEX

The following abbreviations are used:

f. = family (after proper names);
 m.s. = man speaking
 w.s. = woman speaking } (after relationship terms).

Aana: and the *alataua*, I 83, 84 and note 3, 85, 422-3: capital of, the seat of the king, II 11, 21: capital, *see* Leulumoenga: chiefs' council in, *see under* Councils of chiefs (Samoa): division into districts, I 42: division into village-districts, I 40, 42-3: *fono* of, I 85, II 12-13, 18, 34, 82, 448, 450, 459, 460-1, 462, 473-4, III 46-7, 110: greeting for all Aana, II 465: and the *ituau*, I 423, cf. 85: one of the Upolu kingdoms, I 40, 45, II 10-11, 21: *see also* Tuiaana

Abdication: on birth of firstborn, III 203, 380, 390, cf. 85 (Marquesas); 196, 197, 216-17, 371, 389, cf. 198-9 (Society); *see also* Paumotu, III 204: on birth of son (Hao Is.), III 222?; (Society), I 187, 191, 195-6, 199, 242, III 81, 153 and *n.* 10, 195-9, 372: date of assumption of power by son (Society), III 221 *n.* 2, 372-3: father acting as regent after, I 187, 199; (Marquesas), III 203; (Paumotu), III 204; (Society), III 195, 196, 197, 372-3, cf. I 191-2, II 113: father leading troops after (Paumotu), III 204: in favour of adopted son? (Society), III 196-7: in favour of granddaughter (Bukabuka), I 383: in favour of son (Samoa), III 215: on initiation of son? (Paumotu), III 204, 217-18, 222, cf. 380, 391: on marriage of son (Easter Is.), III 206: by Miru chief when old (Easter Is.), I 397, III 378, 383: and question of dates, I 16: of Rotuman sacred king, and "dying god" idea, III 336-9, 378: of Rotuman sacred king, period of office, I 358, 430; III 336, 337, 338, *see also* period of office of secular king, II 495: sanctity of firstborn indicating former practice of? (Mangaia), III 200-1, 221, 232: sanctity and title of father passing to child on, (Marquesas) III 203, 221-2; (Society), I 203 and *n.* 4, III 220-1, 222-3, 373 *n.* 2; cf. Hao Is., III 222: to secure succession to son? (Society), III 196, 372, *see also* question of election, III 371-3, cf. 199: *see also* adult son wrestling with father for land (Rarotonga), III 201, 221 *n.* 2, 378-9; annual election of high priest at feast (Ongtong Java), III 385-6; and son stealing father's title (Samoa), I 55

W III

Abduction, resulting in war (Marquesas), II 351

Abortion, procured by chief's wife to protect her people from *vasu* relationship (Fiji), II 159

Administration of justice, III 1-31; 29 (Easter Is.); 28-9 (Ellice); 28 (Fotuna); 22-4 (Hervey); 29-30 (Manihiki); 25-6 (Marquesas); 30-1 (New Heb.); 26-7 (Niue); 26 (Paumotu); 27-8 (Rotuma); 2-13 (Samoa); 16-22 (Society); 30 (Tikopia); 28 (Tokelau); 13-16 (Tonga); 28 (Uvea)

— laws: announcement of chief's orders by crier (Tonga), II 475, cf. Marquesas, II 491: council making laws (Tokelau), I 374, II 496: council's decision final (Samoa), II 447: decisions of council unanimous? (Niue), II 493, III 26, 134; (Samoa), II 472, III 112, 113, cf. II 449, III 102-3: decrees of chiefs and council obeyed (Samoa), III 3-4: decrees of council, enforcement, II 493 (Niue); 448, 472 (Samoa): decrees of council, necessity for endorsement by king (Mangaia), II 489, III 126: king decreeing, (Mangareva) III 26, 132: no laws? (Marquesas), II 491: laws *re* land well known (Rarotonga), II 490, III 22: one law for all? (Rotuma), I 356: taboo the basis of law, III 22 (Rarotonga); 25 (Marquesas): Tangaroa connected with laws (Niue), I 349

— and local government principle: no chief interfering with other chief's tenant, (Tonga) III 13, cf. I 157: chief's dependants punished by king? III 16 (Society): district "capital" arranging district disputes, (Samoa) III 4: district chief as district magistrate, III 27, 309 (Rotuma); 16, 17, 18 (Society); 13 (Tonga): district chiefs and heads quelling district disturbances (Samoa), I 46, III 3, cf. 4: family head ruling family, III 22 (Rarotonga); 27 (Rotuma); 2, 4-5 (Samoa): family orator as family magistrate, (Samoa) II 367, III 2: local government principle extending to sub-areas, III 4-5 (Samoa); 13-14 (Tonga): village council settling village quarrels, (Samoa) II 447: village orator

26

- as village magistrate (Samoa), II 366–7, 445, III 2
- — magistrates, etc.: chiefs (Easter Is.), III 29, 136, 399; (Ellice), III 28, 399; (Rarotonga), III 398; (Rotuma), I 356, III 27, 134, 399; (Samoa), III 2–3, 3–4, 101, 398; (Society), II 387, III 122; (Tikopia) I, 411, III 30, 136, 399; (Tonga), III 13–14, 120–1, 398: chiefs not magistrates? (Marquesas), III 25, 129: council administering justice (Manihiki)? III 29–30; (New Hebrides), III 31; (Rarotonga)? III 22; (Samoa), II 338, III 3–4, 5, 8–9, 10, 11, 12, 101, 116, 398; (Society), III 17–18; (Tonga)? III 14: council and chief administering justice (Samoa), II 445, III 3–4, 101, 116, 398: council as court of appeal (Samoa), II 445, 448, III 2, 4: council of chiefs and family heads as law-court (Niue), II 493, III 26, 399: council of chiefs settling disputes (Rotuma), II 495: council of war as law-court (Niue), II 493, III 26: councillor (*iatoai*) as deputy-judge (Society), II 387–8: councillors (*iatoai*) (Society), II 387: family heads (Rarotonga), III 22, 398; (Rotuma), III 27, 134, 399; (Samoa), II 445, III 3, 5: head chiefs (Hervey), III 22 (cf. 23), 398; (Society), III 16, 17, 18: head of group and council administering justice, III 398–9: king as chief magistrate, etc. (Fiji, secular king), I 346; (Mangareva), III 26, 132, 398–9; (Niue), III 26; (Tonga, secular king), III 13–14, 120–1, 398: king and chiefs (Easter Is.), III 29, 136, 399; (Ellice), III 28, 399: king, judge and priests (Tokelau), III 28, 135, 399: king not acting as magistrate (Easter Is.), I 397, 403, cf. 394
- — punishment of crime, *see* Crime, etc.
- — settlement of disputes: disputes settled by war (Easter Is.), III 29; (Uvea) III 28: grave offences tried (Samoa), III 3, 4, 101: no judicial tribunals (Marquesas), III 129; (Uvea), III 135: matters settled by persons concerned (Easter Is.), III 29, 136; (Hervey), III 23; (Manihiki), III 30; (Marquesas), III 25, 26; (Samoa), II 338, III 2, 4; (Society), III 16–17, 21; (Uvea), III 28: no personal vengeance after punishment by council (Samoa), III 4
- — trials: accused not always present (Niue), III 26, 27; (Samoa), III 5, cf. 7–8: accused swearing innocence, *see* under Oaths: procedure, III 29–30 (Manihiki); (Samoa), 5; (Society?), 16: sentence carried out by village youths (Samoa), III 5, 8–9: trial by divination (coconut, kava), Samoa, III 6, 7, cf. Tonga III 14–15: trial by ordeal (sharks) Tonga, III 15
- Adoption: abdication in favour of adopted son (Society), III 196–7: adopted child knowing real mother, etc. (Marquesas), II 120: adopted person regarded as member of family, II 387 *n.* 1; (Rarotonga), II 44; (Samoa), II 108 *and n.* 3, III 144: adopted son fighting for adoptive clan (Hervey), II 346, III 287, 306–7, 379: adopted son having rights of son (Paumotu), III 381; (Samoa), III 366, 367: adopted son's rights *re* land, (Hervey), III 287, 292, 306–7, 379: of brother's child, by sister, II 164? (Santa Cruz); ?180, 183 (*fanounga*, Tonga): of brother's daughter, by sister (Samoa), II 161, cf. 171, *see also* So'oa'e, I 80: of brother's son, by brother (Mumui), Tonga, I 152: of chief's son by orator (Samoa), II 106, III 166: of chief's son by related orator (Samoa), III 345: childless wife adopting daughter of (co-wife) sister (Samoa), I 75–6, cf. II 125: of children (group right?), Tonga, III 265: of "friend," *see* Strangers (adopted "friends"): interchange of gifts at time of, (Samoa) II 108, cf. birth presents, 107–8: by mother's clan (Mangaia), II 346: of orator's son, by chief (Samoa), III 166: to recruit family (Rotuma), II 122: of relation as heir (Marquesas), III 380; (Samoa), II 125, cf. I 76: relationship restrictions of adoptive family applying to adopted (Samoa), II 126, 132: succession by adopted children (Marquesas), III 380: succession by adopted son (Hervey), III 379; (Paumotu), III 381; (Samoa), II 106, 372, III 145, 166, 178, 180, 365, cf. 366; (Society), III 196–7, 372, 375: succession by adopted son, with reversion to original family (Samoa), III 367, cf. 207, 365–6, *see also* Society, III 376: succession by adopted son and his son (Samoa), III 366: term for adopted son (Paumotu), II 204: terms for adoptive parents, II 207 (Fotuna); 201 (Marquesas); 204 (Paumotu); 198, cf. 199 (Society): uncle of chief of Tei his adoptive father (Marquesas), II 47–8
- Adultery: culprit banished, III 11 (Samoa); 19 (Society): culprit mutilated (Samoa), III 12: culprit set adrift (Ellice), III 29: culprit's village sacked (Uvea), II 353–4: death penalty for, (Samoa) II 338: death penalty removing husband's claim to discarded wife (Samoa), II 338: giving cause for war (Samoa), II 338: graduated scales of punishment for, III 1: a grave offence (Samoa), III 3, 4
- Adzes, used by priests (Mangaia), II 427
- Afenga, Samoa: *fono* of Tuamasanga held at, II 13, 449, III 113–14: "greeting," II 468–9: as *laumua*, I 44, 45, II 449, 464, 468: Nafanua transferring govern-

INDEX

403

- ment to, I 78–9, II 11–12, 13, 461, III 113: seat of government of Tuamasanga, I 43, 44, 73–4, II 13, 468, III 113–14
- Aitu clan (Mangaia): arriving later than Tongans, I 260, 262, III 67: coming from Tahiti, I 240, 260, 271, 272: extinction of, I 260, II 42: founder, I 260: and list of battles, I 261: *marae*, I 240, 260: Tane the god of, I 240, 260, 271, 272
- Aitutaki: districts, I 282–3, 284, 286, 289–90, 292: early settlers, I 282–93, II 324–5, *see also special names*: “kings,” *see* Maro-una, Ru, Ruatapu, Taruia, Te-erui and Tupu-o-Rongo: land divided by Maro-una, I 286, 290, II 46, III 293: land divided by Ru, I 282, 290, III 293: land divided by Te-erui, I 282–3, 289, 291, 292, II 46, III 293: “moulded” by Te-erui, I 285: name, meaning of, I 250: present *ariki* families of, descended from Ruatapu, I 288, 289: present landowners descended from women of Ru clan, I 284, 286, 289–90, 292, II 46, III 293: and Ra’iatea (Ruatapu), I 285, 293: and Tonga (Ruatapu), I 285, 288, 293
- Akatauira: aiding Rangi etc. to drag up Mangaia, I 252: ancestor of sacred kings, I 258: branch of the Ngariki of same name as, I 259, cf. list on 261: and brothers, ancestors of the Ngariki, I 252, 258, II 271, III 67: and brothers, first inhabitants of Mangaia, I 252: and brothers, joint-kings of Mangaia, I 252: and brothers, rock symbols at *marae*, I 252: “prayers,” etc. bequeathed to, I 252, 257, 428, III 67: both sacred and secular offices held by, I 254–5 (cf. 253), III 67: son or grandson of god Rongo, I 252 and *n. 2*, II 271, III 67
- Alataua districts, etc. (Samoa): Aana and Atua lacking in, I 429: Aana and Atua represented by chief council places, I 83, 84 and *n. 3*, cf. 422–3, III 38–9: as cities of refuge, I 83, 84: in Manu’a, I 83: in Savai’i, I 83, 84, 424: in Tuamasanga, I 83, 424, 429, II 468, *see also* chiefs at House of Fe’e, II 474, III 46, 47, 110–11: in Tutuila, I 83, 84
- and *ituau* (Samoa): *alataua* linked with fighting villages (*ituau*), I 82, 83, cf. 85: *itu’au* in Atua, represented by orator chief, I 85, II 466, 467: *itu’au* of Leulumoenga, I 85, 423: *itu’au* of Tuamasanga, I 424
- office (Samoa): connection with dual kingship? I 82, 421–5, cf. III 38–9: and idea of head chief as priest, III 38–9, cf. I 422–3: represented by orator chief in Atua, I 85, II 466, 467
- orator-chiefs (Samoa): both councillors and priests, III 46–8, 58, 60, cf. II 460: diviners, I 82: of Leulumoenga, holding *aitu-fono* before great *fono*, II 82, 473–4, III 46–7, 110–11: preservers of genealogies and traditions, I 82: semi-divine, I 82, III 46: and war councils, III 116
- and prayers during war: *alataua* places praying instead of fighting (Samoa), I 82–4, 85: different groups having own *alataua* (Samoa), I 424–5: head chiefs praying for victory (Tahiti), II 342, III 34, cf. I 207: high chiefs praying instead of fighting (Samoa), I 85, 422 (cf. 422–3), 424–5, III 38: priest praying at home during battle (Samoa), II 250: priest praying during war (Tahiti), I 223, cf. 207: sacred king praying in *marae* (Mangaia), I 422: victory mainly dependent on prayers, I 422: cf. Easter Is., II 439, priest’s incantations destroying enemy; and Mangaia, I 254, 255, 419, prayers of sacred kings protecting island: *see also* prayers for peace (Niue), I 348, 349
- Aloali’i, *anoalo*, *see under* Councils of chiefs (Samoa)
- Alo-alo: connection with Fiji, Manu’a, Savai’i (Samoa), I 117: god of Haapai (Tonga), I 117: god of weather, etc. (Tonga), II 412: invoked annually and monthly (Tonga), II 412: son of Tangaroa (Samoa), I 117: had temples and priests (Tonga), II 412
- Altars: for human sacrifice (Fiji), II 81; (Hervey), I 252, II 77: kept clean by priest’s assistants (Marquesas), II 431, cf. Society, II 414: in *marae* (Society), II 67, 70: priestesses having, in own houses (Marquesas), II 432: special “altars” for women-gods? (Paumotu) II 284–5, cf. 286: *see also Marae*
- Amo (Tevahitua): abdication on birth of son, I 187, 191–2: building pyramid for son, I 174: descent, I 186–7: effort to establish son’s supremacy, I 187–90, 192–5, II 72: extinction of line of, I 204: head chief of Papara and Teva, I 187: kinship right to visit Hapape, I 196, II 72, III 79: marriage with Pura, I 187: marriage after Pura’s death, I 199: priest of, praying to Tane, I 238: *rahui* for son of, I 187–8, II 117, III 328: relationship to Ari’ipaea, I 202, II 73: relationship to Teu and Tutaha, I 190–1: Tavi eau ru ancestor of, I 191: Tevahitua taking name of, on birth of son, I 187, III 153: Vehiatua at war with, I 192, 193, 194, II 341–2: younger brother of, high-priest, I 188, II 345
- Anaa (Paumotu): districts, I 338: dominance over N.W. Paumotu, I 337: no king of, I 337: and suzerainty of Tahiti, I 337–8
- Ancestor: same term for “god” and, (Tikopia) II 298, 299, 308: term for,

- II 206 (Niue; 149 (Samoa); 199 (Society); 178 (Tonga)
- Aneiteum (New Hebrides), districts with head chiefs, I 414-15
- Animals, etc.: born of women, II 309; 245 (Samoa); 268-9 (Society); cf. yam born of woman (Tonga), II 258, 260: descent from (Society), II 264, 267, 268, 270: gods incarnate in, II 287-8 (Paumotu); 221, 222, 223, 226, 249 (Samoa): human origin of animal etc. gods, II 281, 284 (Marquesas); 299 (Tikopia): humans (or gods) turning into, II 309; (Easter Is.), 297; (Hervey), 277; (Marquesas), 307; (Paumotu), 287; (Samoa), 304, 308; (Society), 269-70; (Tonga), 254-5, 256, 260: sacred, privilege of eating, II 312-15: spirits of dead returning as, *see under the Dead*, spirits returning
- Anua Motua (Mangareva): arrival, I 327, 331: deriving from Avaiki, I 326, 327, 331, 332, 333: and Easter Island, I 327, 331: establishing rule over Taku, I 327, 331, 328: expedition to Pacific, I 327, 331, III 334: incurring famine by expulsion of Taratahi, III 333: leaving throne to grandson, I 327: and his line, "Tangaroans," I 331-4, III 71: and lists of kings, I 327, 332-3: Mangarevan kingdom, extent, I 328, 331: usurping Taratahi's throne, I 327, 331: "willing" dominions to family, I 327-8, 331-2, II 49, III 169, 304
- Apakura, I 213
- Areas of jurisdiction: *see under* Government and governmental areas and individual place names
- Areoi (Karioi, Kaioa): general Polynesian terms, I 21 n. 1: Karioi houses, etc. at Atia-te-varinga-nui, I 21
- (Marquesas): "common" men? II 398, cf. 399: and "dying-god" feasts connected with Maui, I 302: singers and dancers, II 398-9: wandering about, II 398: whitening skin with juice, etc. II 398-9
- (Society Islands): grand-master at Ra'iatea, I 219: head *areoi* fed, III 83: initiate given new name, III 156: leading *areoi* as priests, III 44: origin of the society of, I 219, cf. III 158: plundering the people, III 354: Pomare giving cloth to, III 356: ranks indicated by tattooing, II 323: right to entertainment, III 354: strolling players, III 354
- Ark of god, III 49 (Samoa); 34 (Tahiti)
- Assembly house: council meetings held in? (Marquesas), II 491-2, 492-3; (Samoa), II 82, 448, 451; (Society), II 486; (Tokelau), I 374, II 496; (Tonga), II 476-7, 478: of gods (Mangaia), I 251, cf. Samoa, II 83: as guest house (Samoa), II 82, 452: important chief having, (Samoa) II 452: at *marae*, II 60; (Samoa), II 452, 453, 456; (Society), II 486; (Tonga), II 476, 477, cf. 479: named, II 469, 452 (Samoa); 486 (Society): orientation (Samoa), II 452-3, 454, 455: seating in, *see* Seating in assembly house: shape (Samoa), II 452, 454: as social centre (Samoa), II 82-6: state imagined as (Mangaia), I 251, cf. "pillars" *under* Seating, etc.: as temple (Samoa), II 82: as temple, *aitu-fono* held in, (Samoa) II 82, 473: as temple, *see also* House of Fe'e (Samoa), II 474, III 46, 110-11: used for official and religious purposes, II 60: *see also* village badge on ridgebeam, *under* House
- Assembly place, each chief having one (Society), II 65, cf. 67; *see also the koutu*, Rarotonga, II 76
- Atafu (Tokelau): descent of kings of, I 373-4, III 71-2
- Atea (Oatea, Vatea): associated with light, I 266 n. 1: keel of "Rarotongan" canoe named after, I 35
- (Hervey, Aitutaki): Ru descended from, I 286, 289, 293, III 69: Ruatapu descended from, I 287, III 69: Tangia descended from, I 286-7, III 68: Te-erui descended from, I 286-7, III 69
- (Hervey, Atiu): early kings descended from, I 294, 297, III 69
- (Hervey, Mangaia): father of men, II 272, 274: Papa wife of, III 289: porpoise associated with, II 272, 277: Rongo and Tangaroa, sons of, II 275 n. 1, III 289: settling claims of Rongo and Tangaroa to Mangaia, III 289: son of Vari-ma-tetakere, II 274
- (Hervey, Rarotonga): father of Rongo, Tane, Tu, Tangaroa, I 266: marrying Papa, I 266: Pa chiefs descended from, I 272
- (Oataia, etc.) Marquesas: defeating Tangaroa, I 308 n. 1, II 274, III 70: first inhabitant, III 70: an important god, I 308 n. 1: kava and shark children of, II 280: representing light or sun, I 308 n. 1: settling in the islands, I 306-7: son of sky and earth, I 306, 307: and Tane, leaders of migrations, I 30-1, 341: Teii chief descended from, III 69-70
- (Paumotu): ancestor of Mangarevan kings, *see under* Mangareva, etc.: creating man (Tiki), I 339, II 205, III 71: creating world, I 339, III 71, cf. I 339-40: son of earth and sky, I 338: supplanted by Tangaroa (Mangareva), I 332-3, 338, 341-2: Tane killing, I 338-9, cf. 341
- Atia-te-varinga-nui, I 21
- Ationgie (Samoa): descended from Pili and Tangaroa, I 61: Lealali probably not son of, I 60-2, 65-6, III 249-50: sons driving out Tongans, *see under*

INDEX

405

- Fata etc.: and term *laumua*, I 45, 74: will of, and constitution of Tuamasanga, I 60, 73-4: will of, and division of Upolu and Savai'i, I 65, III 249-50, 258
- Atiu (Hervey): districts, I 296-7: first man, I 293-4: and Manu'a, I 294, 298: and Mauke, I 294, 297: meaning of name, etc. I 250, 293-4: and Rarotonga, I 294, 295, 298: and Tahiti, I 295, 298 — kings of: early kings descended from Atea, I 294, 297, III 69: early kings descended from Tangaroa, I 294, 297, III 69: Mauke and Mitiaro dominated by, I 295, 296, cf. 298, 299: the Mokoero chiefs and other clans, I 295-6: Mokoero chiefs establishing sovereignty, I 295-6, 298: Mokoero chiefs, "Tangaroans," I 297-8, cf. 295: three head-chiefs in modern times, I 296-7: Tutu-aiva supplanted by Utatakienna, I 295, 298: Utatakienna, *see that name*
- Attahuru (Tahiti): ascendancy under Tutaha, I 192, 193-5: bird emblem of Oro on Paea canoe, II 322: chiefs of, resenting assumptions of Pomare II, I 206-7, 208: chiefs of, at war with Pomare I, I 197-8, 199-200: districts Paea and Punaauia, I 177, 180: and the image of Oro, I 206-8, 223-4, 228, 238, 243, II 484, III 34: *marae* of, *see under Marae*: and *maro-ura* of Paea, I 193-4, 200, 202, 203, II 72-3: Papara chief's influence over, I, 177, 187: Punaauia chiefs in, I 172, 177, 185, 188, 193, II 361: Ra'iatean migrants in, I 233-4, II 40-1: Tangia connected with Punaauia, I 235: Teoropaa another name for, I 177: Tutaha of, I 190, 191, 192, 193-4, 195, 196, 197
- Atua: and the *alataua*, I 83, 84 and n. 3, 85, 422-3: boundary encroaching on Tuamasanga, III 251-2: capital of, the seat of the king, II 11, 21: capital, *see* Lufilufi: chiefs' council in, II 443-4, III 113, 170: division into districts, I 42, II 26, 27: division into village-districts, I 40, 42-3: *fono* of, II 13, 374-5, 448-9, 458, 459-60, 461, III 144-5: greeting for all Atua, II 466-7: greeting for sub-district, II 468: and the *ituau*, I 85, II 466, 467: one of the Upolu kingdoms, I 40, 45, II 10-11, 21: pre-"Rarotongan" settlers in, I 68: regarded as a fish, II 466-7: *see also* *Tuātua*
- Aualuma* (Samoa): company of girls of village, II 98: girls of, accompanying the *taupou*, II 470: girls of, "younger sisters" of *taupou*, II 151: headed by *taupou*, *see* *Taupou*: included in Manu'a greetings, II 470: the *sa'oaua* *luma* name, *see that title*: of Taulangi f., tended by Leulumoenga etc. III 172: *taupou* and, present at tattooing of village boys? II 160-1
- Aumanga* (Samoa): band of kava chewers, II 470: called *atuali'i* in Manu'a, II 470
- Aunt, one term for "mother" and, II 204 (Paumotu); 207 (Rotuma)
- Austral islands: ear perforations, I 383: king as priest, III 37
- Avaiki (Havaiki, Hawaiki, etc.): associated with the west (Mangaia), III 300: home of gods, I 326: and Java, I 22: a land of fire (Marquesas), I 307: Mangaia dragged out of, I 252: Miru, demon of, I 387: new homes named after, I 20: and Paumotu, Fakarava Is., I 326: and Ra'iatea, I 210-11, 218, cf. I 170: souls of dead going to, I 20, 326; (Mangaia) III 300: souls of priests not going to (Marquesas), II 306: and Tahiti, I 218, cf. I 170: traditional fatherland, I 20: varying forms of the name, I 20
- Avaiki-raro, groups composing, I 170
- Avaiki-runga, groups composing, I 170
- Avaiki-te-varinga, identified with Java, I 22
- Avenging death of relation: (Mangaia), I 257; (Marquesas), II 351: culprit or relation punished (Mangaia), II 348, cf. 349, *see also* Easter Is. II 354 and Paumotu II 352-3: hereditary duty, II 348, cf. 349 (Hervey); 355 (New Hebrides); 352 (Paumotu); 333-4 (Samoa); 344 (Society): killing of thief not avenged (Mangaia), III 23-4: murder causing war (Tahiti), II 344: nursing revenge (Tahiti), II 344: unsatisfied vengeance, human bone image worn to record (Marquesas), II 352: unsatisfied vengeance, lock of hair recording (Marquesas), II 351-2: unsatisfied vengeance, tattoo marks recording, II 349 (Hervey); 351 (Marquesas): unsatisfied vengeance, tokens to record (New Hebrides), II 354-5: *see also* Blood feud, and Murder
- Avoidance: of father's sister, *see under* Father's sister (m.s.): of sister, *see under* Sister (m.s.): of wife's brother, wife's father, wife's mother, *see under those titles*
- Axe-emblem, and priesthood (Mangaia), II 427
- Banana leaves, god represented by ends of (Samoa), II 228, 241, 250
- Banana trees, etc.: bananas private property, III 316, 317-18 (Funafuti); ?289 (Mangaia): gods immanent in (Samoa), II 219: plantain as charm for warriors (Tonga), II 257: planting of plantains and individual ownership (Niue), III 304, 305
- Banishment: banished chief retaining rank (Tahiti), III 211: by chiefs, III 207, 208 (Samoa); 19, 20 (Society): of chiefs, by council, III 10, 11, 207, cf. 208 (Samoa); 210 (Tahiti): of chiefs, by subjects (Fotuna), I 366, III 213; (Mar-

- quesas), III 212; (Society), I 205, 208–9: by council (Samoa), III 8–9, 10–11; (Tahiti), III 210–11: and destruction of house and property, III 4, 8–10 (Samoa); 19 (Society): exile not entertained by clan-branches under chief banishing (Society), III 19: exile going to enemy clan not allowed to return (Samoa), III 9: exile going to relations (Samoa), III 9, cf. 5: exile not returning unless invited (Samoa), III 9–10: by family (Samoa), III 10–11: king banishing chief with consent of chiefs (Society), III 125, 211, 272: king banishing sub-chief, III 213 (Easter Is.); 23 (Mangaia): for offences against chief, III 22–3 (Mangaia); 11 (Samoa); 17, 19–20, 211, 272, 354, 355 (Society): of offenders, III 29 (Ellice); 8–11 (Samoa); 19 (Society): offenders set adrift (Mangaia), III 23: offenders not set adrift (Samoa), III 10: sentence sometimes resisted, III 8, 10 (Samoa); 125 (Society): to special islands, III 10, 207 (Samoa); 30 (Society)
- Banyan, common in Mangaia and not so in Rarotonga, III 290, 292
- Bird cult: importance of, (Easter Is.), I 405: *see also* Feasts, Easter Is., and Samoa; Feathers; Pigeons; and the *Senga* bird (Samoa)
- Birds: different birds venerated by different people (Society), II 262–3: as district badge on canoe (Samoa), II 317, 318; cf. bird emblem of Oro on Paea canoe (Tahiti), II 322: eating sacrifices, embodiments of god (Society), II 261, 262: (family gods?) not killed by family (Society), II 262–3: giving warning of danger (Society), II 263, cf. 263–4: giving warning of death (Rotuma), II 290: god incarnate in, human ancestor (Tikopia), II 299: gods communicating with men through, II 425–6 (Mangaia); ? 261–2, 263 (Society): gods incarnate in, II 294 (Ellice); ? 296 (Manihiki); 43, 271, 272, 273, 278, 279 (Mangaia); 291 (Niue); 288, 289 (Rotuma); 219, 220, 221, 223, 224, 226, 227 (Samoa); 261, 262–4 (Society); 298, 299, 301–2 (Tikopia); 252, 257–8 (Tonga); ? 293 (Uvea): guiding Rahou (Rotuma), II 289: incised on arms of natives (New Hebrides), II 303: names of birds, etc. applied to villages (Samoa), II 318–19: omens taken from, II 282 (Marquesas); ? 262 (Society): rail reserved for chiefs alone (Rotuma), II 289, 312: sacred, II 282 (Marquesas); 293 (Uvea): not sacred (Tonga), II 253: sanctity of, association with *marae* (Society), II 253, 261: spirits of dead returning in, *see under the* Dead, spirits returning
- Birth: bathing chief's heir in holy water (Tahiti), III 217: birth-mark of "totem" inherited by child? (Hervey), II 278: birth-marks, due to mother's eating "totem" (Tonga), II 257–8: chiefs acting as priests at, (Rotuma) III 44: dedication to god, *see that title*: delivery, persons present at, (Samoa) II 160: of firstborn, importance of father's sister at ceremonies (Banks Is.), II 164: sanctifying chief's heir (Tahiti), III 217: seclusion of child (Paumotu), III 203–4: tree-planting at, III 281 (Fiji), (Marquesas), (New Hebrides), (New Zealand), (? Tonga): *see also* Navel-string, and Pregnancy
- Birth presents: given by father's people to mother, if child belonged to former? (Fiji), II 108: given by husband's family to wife's family during wife's pregnancy (Samoa), II 108: given by mother's family to father's family after child born (Samoa), II 108: given by mother's people to father, if child belonged to former? (Fiji), II 108: interchanged between father and mother's brother (Tikopia), II 211, 212: *see also* interchange of gifts on adoption of child by father's sister (Samoa), II 108
- Blood feud: plaintiff bathing in blood of slain (Society), II 344, *see also* relations smeared with blood of wounded (Fotuna), II 353: plaintiff cutting head with shark's tooth, etc. (Society), I, 188, II 344–5: stones at *marae* for holding blood of plaintiff (Society), II 345, cf. I 188: undertaken by person washing off blood (Society), II 345, cf. I 188
- Blood letting, female relations cutting their heads at wedding (Society), II 116
- Bonito: first fish caught in new boat due to chief (Samoa), III 347: first of season due to chief (Samoa), III 347: fish allied to, and coffin patterns (Marquesas), II 281–2: fish allied to, sacred and not eaten (Marquesas), II 281, 284, 311–12: gods incarnate in (Samoa), II 219: offered and eaten at *marae* (Paumotu), II 286–7
- Borabora (Society): areas, I 214: chiefs of, summoned to investiture of Teva chief, I 193: division into seven districts, I 210: dominance over Ra'iatea, etc. under Puni, I 215–6: exiles from Tahiti, etc. sent to, I 215: Puni becoming head chief of, I 215: Ra'iatean king establishing son as king of, I 213: Ra'iatean king resigning supremacy over, I 217: Rotuman prince marrying princess of, II 71–2: Vavau the ancient name for, I 214
- kings: descended from Hiro, III 66: Pomare aiding, in war, II 342–3: sovereignty held in turn by two lines of ?

INDEX

407

- I, 214, 430, III 394: titles of, I 214: whole island under, I, 214, II 341
- Boundaries: not altering (Aitutaki), I 286, 290, III 293; (Society), III 278, 286: altering through wars (Rotuma), I 359: altering of Vaiari and Hitiaa boundaries (Tahiti), I 184–5: of Atua, encroaching on Tuamasanga (Samoa), III 251–2: at coast, etc., III 309, 311 (Rotuma); 240, 249 (Samoa): of districts (Aitutaki), I 286, 290, III 293; (Rotuma), III 309, 311, 313; (Samoa), I 46–7, III 239; (Society), III 278; (Tikopia), I 411: of districts, guarded by the villages nearest (Samoa), I 46–7: of divisions (Samoa), III 251–2: early origin attributed to, (Aitutaki) I 286, 290, III 293; (Samoa), III 250–1, 252–4; (Society), III 279: of family property, III 295, 297 (Marquesas); 308, 311, 313 (Rotuma); 239, 249 (Samoa): of private property (Society), III 278: of private property indefinite (Samoa), III 248–9, III 260: removal causing war (Society), III 278: of villages (Rotuma), III 309, 311; (Samoa) I 46, III 248, 249: of village-districts (Samoa), III 248, 249
- Boundary marks: battlefield marking boundary (Samoa), III 252: not existing, III 315, 316 (Funafuti); 304 (Niue): fences (Tonga), III 267–8: images as boundary gods, etc (Easter Is.), III 318; (Society), III 278: natural objects (Rotuma), III 308; (Samoa), III 249, 251; (Society), III 278; (Tikopia), I 411: posts (Rotuma), III 308: stone fences (Marquesas), III 295, 299: stones, III 318 (Easter Is.); 297 (Marquesas); 308, 309 (Rotuma); 249 (Samoa); 278 (Society); *see also* walls *below*: terms for (Paumotu), III 303: trees, III 316? (Funafuti); 308, 309 (Rotuma); 249 (Samoa); 278 (Society): trenches, III 249 (Samoa); 279 (Society): walls (stone), III 297, 299 (Marquesas); 308, 309 (Rotuma); 249–51, 252–4 (Samoa): walls (stone and earth), Society, III 278–9
- Bow and arrows, used for pigeon-shooting (Samoa), II 238
- Bowl, representing Tangaroa (Samoa), II 219, cf. 221
- Breadfruit trees: firstfruits in Fiji due to *tufiti* (Samoa), III 346: and fishing taboo (Marquesas), III 332: fruit stored in pits, III 334 (Mangareva); 331 (Marquesas): hereditary family property (Marquesas), III 297, 298, cf. 299–300: individual and common ownership of, (Society) III 279–81, 284–5: individual ownership of, III 316, 317–18 (Funafuti); ? 301 (Paumotu): raids on (Marquesas), III 298, 299: tabooed before feast (Fotuna), III 340: tabooed sale of fruit to prevent dearth (Mangareva), III 334: and title to land (Rarotonga), III 291–2, 293: tribute of fruit to chief (Society), III 355
- Brother: avoidance of sister, *see* Sister-and-brother avoidance: children as “brothers” and “sisters” of father’s sister and mother’s brother (Samoa), II 125, cf. 128–9: of father, *see* Father’s brother: as heir, *see under* Succession: *hoa*, adopted friend or (Society), II 384, 385, 386–7: of husband, *see* Husband’s brother: husbands of two sisters counted brothers (Tikopia), II 210: of mother, *see* Mother’s brother: relations with sister, *see under* Sister: term for, II 208 (Bukabuka); 212 (Duff Is.): of wife, *see* Wife’s brother: wife’s brother’s wife’s brother counted as? (Tahiti), I 191
- (m.s.): term for, II 204? (Paumotu); 199? (Society); 209, 215 (Tikopia): term including cousins, II 199 (Society); 209 (Tikopia)
- (m.s.), sister (w.s.): same term for, II 207, 215 (Fotuna); 205, 215 (Niue); 207, 215 (Rotuma); 150–1 (Samoa); 179, 215 (Tonga): term including cousins, etc. II 207 (Fotuna); 150 (Samoa); 179 (Tonga)
- (w.s.): term for, II 200? (Hervey); 207, 215 (Fotuna); 205, 215 (Niue); 204 (Paumotu); 143, 207, 215 (Rotuma); 151, 214 (Samoa); 199, 215 (Society); 180, 215 (Tonga): term including cousins, etc. II 207 (Fotuna); 103, 151, 160 (Samoa); 180 (Tonga)
- (w.s.), sister (m.s.)?: same term for? (Tikopia), II 209, 215: term including cousins (Tikopia), II 209
- (elder): term for (Duff Is.), II 212, 214
- — (m.s.)?, term used by father’s cousin? (Society), II 199
- — (w.s.), term for? (Society), II 199, 214
- — (m.s.), elder sister (w.s.): same term for, II 200–1? 214? (Hervey); 206, 214 (Niue); 204, 214 (Paumotu); 199, 214 (Society); 180, 214 (Tonga); *see also* Tikopia, II 209: term including distant relatives (Tonga), II 180
- (eldest) and eldest sister, ranking above rest (Tonga), III 369–70
- — (m.s.), eldest sister (w.s.), same term for (Marquesas), II 202, 214
- — (w.s.), eldest sister (m.s.), same term for (Marquesas), II 202, 214
- (younger), term for (Duff Is.), II 212, 214
- — (m.s.): term for (Tikopia), II 209: term used by father’s cousin? (Society), II 199
- — (m.s.), younger sister (w.s.): same term for, II 200–1? 214? (Hervey); 202,

- 214 (Marquesas); 206? 214? (Niue); 204? 214? (Paumotu); 151, 214 (Samoa); 199, 214 (Society); 180, 214 (Tonga): term including cousins, etc. II 151? (Samoa); 180 (Tonga)
- (w.s.), younger sister (m.s.), same term for (Marquesas), II 202
- Brother-in-law, term for, II 206 (Niue); 205 (Paumotu); 179 (Tonga)
- (m.s.), sister-in-law (w.s.), same term for, II 201 (Rarotonga); 202 (Marquesas); 200 (Society)
- Brother-in-law and sister-in-law respectively, term (Society), II 200
- Brother's child (w.s.), term for, II 210 (Tikopia); 180 (Tonga)
- daughter, term for (Bukabuka), II 208
- (m.s.): called "daughter," (New Hebrides), II 213: marriage with (Si'uleo), Samoa, I 116: marriage with, taboo (Tikopia), II 146
- (w.s.): called "niece" (New Hebrides), II 213: and father's sister, *see under* Father's sister (w.s.)
- son (m.s.), called "son," II 207? (Fotuna); 213 (New Hebrides); 149 (Samoa); 178 (Tonga)
- (w.s.): called "nephew" (New Hebrides), II 213: and father's sister, *see under* Father's sister, (m.s.)
- wife (m.s.), (younger) brothers sharing, Marquesas, II 121, 397 *and n.* 1.
- Brothers and sisters: age distinctions, II 214: terms indicating sex distinction, II 214-15
- Bukabuka (Danger Is.): "created" by Matariki, I 383: groups descended from ancestresses, I 382: groups and sub-groups, I 382, 383: kings, I 382: origin of man in, I 382: and Rarotonga, I 382: settled by Tongans, I 382
- Burial: in extended position, I 6; cf. burial of god Temanovaroa (Mangaia), I 251-2: sitting-interment people, I 5, 8-9, 9-10: *see also* Corpse
- places: caves (Mangaia), II 273, 306, 315; cf. each chief having own mountain (Society), II 65, 67: corpse hung on tree (Tahiti), III 154: *marae* (chiefs), (Paumotu), I 335: near *marae* (chief), Tonga, II 476, 477; *see also* II 60: on shore (Tahiti), III 154: of *sou*, on hill (Rotuma), III 336: *see also* Easter Is., I 385, 388
- Burning: beard of thief (Society), III 21: the body (mourning), Samoa, II 223: spirit of thief (Rarotonga), III 24
- Butterfly: dead chief entering (Easter Is.), II 308: gods incarnate in (Samoa), II 221, 225, 247
- Cannibalism: cannibal feast before egg-race (Easter Is.), I 405-6: the dead eaten (Manu'a), I 103: enemies eaten (Mangaia), I 257, 259, II 348; (Paumotu), I 336: eye of enemy eaten (? Ra'iatea, ? Marquesas), I 264: human flesh, food for god (priest) (Samoa), II 240: human flesh, food for head chief, (Rarotonga), I 268, cf. 269, *see also* Malietoa (Samoa), III 346: human victim eaten (Marquesas), II 431: murderers eaten (Paumotu), III 26: originated by Rongo-oe (Rarotonga), I 274: sacred king bound to maintain (Fiji), I 345-6: souls of men eaten by god? (Moso) Samoa, III 6, cf. Illness, etc. cause, swelling of the body: *see also* sun devouring men (Samoa), I 50-1
- Canoe-making: canoe-makers acting and compensated as priests (Samoa), II 408, cf. Hervey Islands, II 427: canoe-makers at receptions held by sacred king (Easter Is.), I 398: chant to appease tree-spirit, etc. (Hervey), II 427: question of payment, etc. (Samoa), II 378: subject of *fono* (Tonga), II 475
- Canoes: clan badge on (Aitutaki), II 324-5: clan badge, animal figurehead, etc. as district badge (Samoa), II 317-18, 320; cf. animal names given to villages, II 318-19: clan badge, emblem of district god on district canoe (Society), II 268, 322; cf. Mangaia, II 324 *and n.* 4, Rarotonga, II 324: clan members as parts of canoe (Rarotonga), II 395; (Fiji and Society), II 389-90, III 148: clan regarded as canoe (Rarotonga), I 268 (Tangiaia), II 45 *and n.* 2; (Society), I 182, II 42, 389; cf. Niue, II 402: conch shells on, emblems of god (Samoa), II 320: figures of cocks on sails of (Tonga), II 321: offenders drowned from, III 30 (Bukabuka); 21 (Society): offenders set adrift in, III 29 (Ellice); ? 23 (Mangaia); 27 (Niue); 30 (Tikopia); 15-16 (Tonga); cf. Samoa, III 10: priest as canoe "anchor," II 428 (Marquesas); 434 (Paumotu); 407 (Samoa); 409, 410 (Tonga): priest as "canoe of god," II 439 (Ellice); 438 (Fotuna); 407 (Samoa); 439 (Tokelau): variety used by head chiefs (Tahiti), I 188
- Carpenters: acting and compensated as priests (Samoa), II 408: priests of Tangaroa acting as, (Tonga) II 413
- Carpentry (Samoa), II 377, 378
- Centipede: god connected with (Easter Is.), II 296-7: gods incarnate in, II 272, 273 (Mangaia); 221, 251 (Samoa): omens taken from (Mangaia), II 279
- Chiefs: banishment by, or of, *see under* Banishment: causing illness, *see under* Cursing, and Illness, etc. cause: curing illness, *see under* Illness, curing of, and Illness, treatment: classes of, II 356-65; 365 (Bukabuka); 364 (Easter Is.); 361-2

INDEX

409

- (Hervey); 362 (Marquesas); 363 (Niue); 362–3 (Paumotu); 363 (Rotuma); 357–9 (Samoa); 360–1 (Society); 365 (Tikopia); 364 (Tokelau); 37–8, 359–60 (Tonga); 363–4 (Uvea): and Council, *see under* Councillors and Councils: deification of, *see* Deification of men: deposition, *see that title*; *see also* withdrawal of title *under* Titles, etc.: despotic sacred king losing rank (Mangaia), I 257: despots banished (Samoa), III 10, II: despots deposed, III 132, 212, 302, 360 (Mangareva); 211–12, 290, 358 (Rarotonga): despots killed (Mangareva), III 132, 212, 302, 360; (Samoa), III 207; (Tonga), I 143, cf. 153, III 117 (*tuitonga*), I 158, III 208, 266 (*tuikano-kubolu*); *see also* I 16–17: divine descent, *see that title*: electing priests and sub-chiefs, *see under* Election, etc.: election of, *see under* Election, etc. and Titles, etc.: food of, *see under* Food of chiefs, etc. and Food of sacred persons: food offerings, etc. due to, *see under* Food offerings, etc.: and food supply, *see under* Food supply, control, etc., and Food supply magically affected by chiefs: and government, *see under* Government, etc.: as heads of families (Rotuma), III 225 (Samoa), II 445–6, 450, III 101, 143, 144: holding group land, title, and *marae*, *see under* Land, and Titles, etc.: inauguration, *see that title*: labour due to (Easter Is.), III 362; (Mangareva), III 132, 334, 260; (Niue), III 360; (Rarotonga), III 358; (Rotuma), III 339, 361; (Society), III 355; (Tonga), II 383, 475, III 349; (Uvea), I 371: labour not due to (Marquesas), III 359: and land, *see various headings under* Land: as magistrates, *see under* Administration, etc. magistrates: making “wills,” *see under* Wills: powers of, *see below*: as priests, *see under* Priests, Prayers, *Alataua* and prayers during war: rank of same chief varying in different districts (Rarotonga), III 127, 150; (Tahiti), II 66: relationship to orators, etc. *see under* Classes of society, relationship: retinue, hereditary (Tonga), II 38–9: retinue and state (Tonga), II 382–3 (cf. 383–4): retinue, younger brothers, etc. (Society), II 384, 385, 386–7, 388: sanctity, *see* Sanctity of chiefs: superior physique of, and “conquering race” theory, I 3, III 137–8; cf. Paumotu, III 87–8, and Rotuma, I 358, III 336, duty of *sou* to be fat: taboos imposed etc. by, *see under* Taboo: tribute due to, *see* Tribute, Firstfruits, and Food-offerings, etc. — powers of, III 97–136; 135–6 (Easter Is.); 135 (Ellice); 134–5 (Fotuna); 126–8 (Hervey); 128–31 (Marquesas); 133–4 (Niue); 131–3 (Paumotu); 134 (Rotuma); 99–117 (Samoa), 121–6 (Society); 136 (Tikopia); 135 (Tokelau); 117–21 (Tonga); 135 (Uvea): different features of, III 99: making peace, *see under* Peace: making war, supported by group in war, *see under* War: power of life and death, etc., *see* Life and death, power of: religious basis of, *see under* Sacred and secular offices: rights over property, etc. *see under* Property: rights of subjects, III 97, 98–9 — sub-chiefs: (Fiji), I 344; (Marquesas), I 317–18, III 128; (Rarotonga), I 270, 272, II 362; 395; (Samoa), II 357, 359; (Society), I 181, II 113; (Tikopia), I 410, 411, 412, III 30; (Tonga), II 37; (Uvea), II 364: difficulty of distinguishing middle classes from, II 356–7: having own warriors and retainers (Tonga), II 382: as head chief’s retainers (Tonga), II 382: orators and priests as minor chiefs, *see under* Councillors and Priests — terms for kings and: the *ali’ipā’ia* (Samoa), II 357–8: the *ari’i de hoi* and *ari’i maro-ura* (Society), II 360–1: modes of address (according to rank), Samoa, III 90: most villagers called “chiefs” (Samoa), II 358: relations of title-bearers called “chiefs” (Samoa), II 358, cf. 359: term *ariki* (*ali’i*, etc.), applied to king, etc., II 356–7; (Bukabuka), I 383, II 365; (Easter Is.), I 396, 402, II 364; (Hervey), I 252, 254, 273, 279, 283, 284, 294, 299, II 361–2; (Marquesas), I 317, 318, 320, 321, 322, II 362; (Paumotu), I 336, II 362; (Samoa), II 357–8; (Society), I 191, 192, 196, II 360–1; (Tikopia), I 411, 412, 413, II 365; (Tokelau), I 373, 376–7, II 364: term *hau* (*sau*), title of secular king (Fiji, Tonga), I 346; (Tonga), I 131, 135, 150, 160: term *latu* (Fotuna), I 368, cf. Tonga, Latulibulu, Latu, II 191, 192, 197, 198: term *patu-iki* applied to king (Niue), II 363; term *tavana*, corruption of “governor” (Society), I 179 n. 8, II 113 and n. 1, 363, 386: terms *afio*, *susu*, *maluu* (Samoa), II 357, 358, III 90: terms for, II 364 (Ellice); 362 (Marquesas); 363 (Niue); 363 (Paumotu); 363 (Rotuma); 357–9 (Samoa); 360–1 (Society); 365 (Tikopia); 359–60 (Tonga): the *tui*-title, II 358–9, III 161–2; (Ellice), I 380, II 364; (Fiji), I 345, 346, II 359; (Rotuma), I 115, II 359, 363, III 162; (Samoa), II 357, 358, III 161–2; (Tokelau), I 374, II 364; (Tonga), II 359–60, III 162: *tupu*, meaning “the grown” (Samoa), II 151 n. 8, 357, 358, cf. II 433–4: the *tupu*-title (Ellice), I 378–9, II 364; (Samoa), I 80–1, II 151 n. 8, 357, 358; *see also* the Tubu family (secular kings,

- Tonga): the *tupu*-title, relatively modern, I 80-1, II 357, 358
- Chiefs' language: III 89-96 (Fiji), III 92-3; (Niue), I 354, III 93; (Samoa), III 89-91, 157; (Tonga), III 91, cf. I 165; (Uvea), III 93; (Uvea, Loyalty), I 416-17: chiefs and gods addressed in same terms, III 93; (Fiji), III 93; (Samoa), III 90-1; (Tonga), III 91; (Uvea), III 93: and religious language, the same? III 92, 129 (Marquesas); 92 (Paumotu); 91-2 (Society): special phrases used *re* king? (Society), III 79: strangers addressed in, (Samoa) III 90: unknown in Fotuna? I 368: used *re* pigeons (Samoa), II 236, 238: used in referring to, or addressing chiefs (Samoa), II 236, III 89-90: *see also* avoidance of names of chiefs and gods *under* Names
- Child: of chief, term, II 150 (Samoa); 179 (Tonga): and father, term (Fotuna), II 207; and mother, term (Fotuna), II 207: term, II 201 (Marquesas); 205 (Niue); 204 (Paumotu); 208 (Penrhyn); 201 (Rarotonga); 149 (Samoa); 199 (Society); 209 (Tikopia); 179 (Tonga): term also applied to grandchild, II 149
- belonging to either parent: (Fiji), II 108, 134 *n.1*; (Hervey), II 118; (Society), II 116, cf. I 172; (Samoa), II 128-9, cf. 127, 132, 133-4; *see also* Rotuma, III 310, child formerly inheriting through one parent only: belonging to father's or mother's family according to its name (Society), III 151: dedicated to father's or mother's god (Samoa), II 106-7, III 151: dedicated to god of parent not devoted to sacrifice (Hervey), II 118: terms denoting "man's" child, "woman's" child, etc. II 149-50 (Samoa); 209 (Tikopia), cf. *Daughter, and Son*
- belonging to father: (Hervey), II 118; (Rotuma, in cases of chiefs), II 122: father "buying" the child (Samoa), II 107-8, cf. Fiji, II 108, *and* Tikopia, II 211, 212
- — — mother: (Marquesas), II 120-1? (Rotuma), II 122; (Taumaco), I 413: child of "defeated" father generally belonging to mother? (Hervey), II 119-20: eldest son representing mother's family (Samoa), II 107: one child generally given to mother's family (Hervey), II 118
- Children: acting as servants, II 371-2, cf. 376 (Samoa); 383 (Tonga): group property? (Tonga), III 265: of same father and different mothers, term (Tonga), II 179: of same father, term (Samoa), II 150: of same mother and different fathers, term (Tonga), II 179: of same mother, term, II 150 (Samoa); 179 (Tonga): of same pair of parents, term (Samoa), II 5: of same parent (Samoa), II 150
- "Clan" badges: II 317-28; 327-8 (Easter Is.); 327 (Fotuna); 323-5 (Hervey); 325-7 (Marquesas); 327 (Niue); 327 (Paumotu); 317-21 (Samoa); 322-3 (Society); 321-2 (Tonga): emblems of gods worn by worshippers in battle (Samoa), II 319-20: temporary badges worn by combatants (Samoa), II 317, 318: *see also* animal etc. names given to districts (Samoa), II 318-19
- groups: associated with "canoe," *see under* Canoes: clan gods, *see under* Gods, *and under* names of chiefs, etc.: clan relations memorialized in *fono* greetings (Samoa), II 18, 27-8, 29, 30, 31, 32, 34, 36: clan slogan (Tahiti), I 173: "clans" of different islands, etc., *see under* place names: excommunicated member of family losing family rights and protection, II 126: families, consanguine, *see under* Families: family head ruling family, *see under* Government: family name (held by family head, granted by family, etc.), *see under* Titles, etc.: family responsibility for individual, *see under* Crime and punishment, *and under* War, allies, etc.: government patriarchal, etc. *see under* Government, etc.: hostility to strangers, travellers going to relations, *see under* Strangers: organized before migration from Indonesia, I 25: relationship between different classes, *see under* Classes of society, inter-relationship, etc.: *see also* Land, *and* *Marae* as social centre, etc.
- — common ancestry: (Easter Is.), Hotumatua, I 390, 391, 401, 408-9, II 55; (Fiji), I 343, 344, II 50, 51; (Hao), Tiki, III 71; (Hivaoa), I 315-16, 431, II 47; (Huahine), I 214-15, II 41; (Nukuhiva), I 314-15, II 46-7; (Samoa), Lealali and descendants, I 59-60, 62-5, 66-8, *see also* II 4, 5, 8; (Tahiti), Teva, I 172-3, II 39-40, 341, *see also* Mataiea people, II 268; (Tokelau), I 373, III 71-2: place and family names indicative of, (Samoa) I 64, 67-8, II 103, III 173, 174, 175: *see also* patronymic prefix *ngati* (Hervey), II 45, III 150; (Marquesas), II 48, III 150; (Paumotu), II 49, III 150; *see also* Niue, II 52-3
- "Clans," social and local grouping: II 1-59; 55-8 (Easter Is.); 54-5 (Ellice); 49-51 (Fiji); 42-6 (Hervey); 46-9 (Marquesas); 52-3 (Niue); 49 (Paumotu); 54 (Rotuma); 3-36 (Samoa); 39-42 (Society); 58 (Tikopia); 36-9 (Tonga); 54 (Uvea): "brother" and "sister" village-districts (Samoa), II 336-8:

INDEX

411

- “brother” village-districts (Samoa), I 85, 423, II 336, 337: central home the seat of head of group, II 10, cf. II-12, 21-2: “families” and branches, with heads and sub-heads (in own areas) (Samoa), II 3, 4, 5, 6, 218; III 143: *see also* Tahiti (Teva), I 171-4; 218, II 39-40, 341: family heads and district chief living in district (Rotuma), I 357, II 54, III 225: group sections as family branches (Easter Is.), II 55-6, 57-8: groups, each a “family” with single head (Mangaia), I 258, II 43, 346: head of group, power over and relation to group, III 396-400; (Samoa), II 3, 5: king, the father and high-priest of “family,” (Fakaofu), I 374: “kings,” head chiefs of social groups (Samoa), II 11-15, *see also* 15-22, III 171-5: original constitution, families with their chiefs (Niue), I 354: relationship bond between inhabitants of group area, sub-areas, etc. (Fiji), I 343-4, II 50, 51; (Samoa), I 423, 424, II 4, 7, 18, 218-19, 444: separate “families,” in division related (Samoa), II 18-20: separate “families” in village-districts related, Samoa, II 9-10, 22-6 (Aana), 26-7 (Atua): term for area and group the same (Niue), II 52, 53; (Rarotonga), I 263-4; (Rotuma), I 357; (Tahiti), I 179: terminology explained, II 1: *see also* Tane and the eight district gods (Huahine), I 214-15, 239, II 41
- social nature of war: II 329-55; 354 (Easter Is.); 353 (Fotuna); 345-9, cf. 43-4 (Hervy); 349-52 (Marquesas); 354-5 (New Hebrides); 353 (Niue); 352-3 (Paumotu); 353 (Rotuma); 330-9 (Samoa); 341-5 (Society); 354 (Tikopia); 339-41 (Tonga); 353-4 (Uvea): *details under* War; *see also* Avenging death of relation
- sub-groups: branches in different areas or islands (Samoa), II 19, 20, 23, 26-36: branches outside main area participating in title-granting, etc. (Samoa), II 17 (cf. 13, 14), 22, 27-8, 29, 31, 32, 59, 331: branches of special “clans,” *see under individual names*: branches in stranger areas founded through marriages (sister’s son connection?), Samoa, II 9-10, 24, 25, 27, 29-30, 32, 158, 159, 334-5: branch families, “branches” of more than one group (Samoa), II 4: branch head governing branch (Samoa), II 5, 331: branch head sometimes independent of group head (Samoa), II 5: branch supporting group head in war, etc. (Samoa), II 5, 331, cf. 4, 8, 9n.1: new settlements named after old home? (Tahiti), I 176: term for sub-group, *hapu*, II 45, cf. Niue, 52-3
- and unrelated families, etc.: adopted persons regarded as members of family, *see under* Adoption: defeated persons serving victor-clan (Hervy), II 119-20: dependants (and dependencies) associated with clan, but not of it (Fiji), I 344-5, II 51: dependent families (Samoa), II 8: outsiders attached to family counted as belonging to it (Samoa), II 126, 127, 131-2: persons not of kin admitted into family (Niue), II 52, 53: *see also* Adoption, and Strangers (adopted “friends”): *see also* exile going to enemy clan (Samoa), III 9; and village entering new allegiance (Samoa), I 47
- Classes of society: chiefs, councillors, lower classes, middle classes, priests, servants, slaves, *see those titles*: classes in group as parts of canoe (Rarotonga), II 395; (Fiji and Society), II 389-90; III 148: chiefs and sub-chiefs as “pillars,” etc. of house, *see under* Seating, etc.
- — — inter-relationship, III 137-50; (Hervy), II 44-5, 394-5, III 149-50; (Marquesas), II 47-8, 398, III 150; (Niue), III 150, cf. II 52-3, 401-2; (Paumotu), III 150, cf. II 49, 400-1; (Samoa), II 15-22, III 142-8; (Society), II 42, 385-6, 387-90, III 148-9; (Tonga), I 141-2, II 37-9, 381-2, III 141-2: and “conquering race” theory, I 141-2, III 137-8
- — — relationship: between chief and electoral families (Ellice), ?I 328, ?III 206; (Samoa), II 15-17, 21-2, 31-2, III 48, 145, 171-5; (Tonga, *tuikanokubolu*), III 188-9, 191, 193-4: between chiefs and head chief (king), II 356; (Mangareva), II 49, 352, 363, III 150; (Marquesas), II 47-8, 349-50; (Rarotonga), II 44-6, 394, III 150; (Samoa), II 17-22, III 140; (Society), II 41, 42, 113-14, 389, III 148; *see also* Tonga, I 141-2, II 37: between chiefs and minor chiefs, etc. II 356; (Fiji), II 50; (Rarotonga), II 44, III 149-50; (Samoa), II 18; (Society), II 42; (Tonga), III 141-2; *see also* chief’s brothers, etc. forming his retinue (Society), II 384, 385, 386-7, 388: between middle classes and chiefs, III 138-41; (Marquesas), II 397-8, III 150; (Rarotonga), II 394-5? III 149-50?: middle classes related to lower classes (Society), III 149?; (Tonga), II 381-2, III 141, 142: orators the “brothers” of their chiefs (Samoa), I 54, III 48, 144-5, *see also* *usoali’i*, II 377, III 111, 114, and cf. *aloali’i* and *anoalo*, III 112-13; *see also* Tonga, separation of sacred and civil offices, I 143-4, 144-5, 149, III 193, and Mangareva, black king, I 329-30: orators’ daughters marrying chiefs (Samoa), II 367, *see also* Society, II 385-

- 6, 389–90, III 148: orators descended from chiefs, Samoa, II 443, III 112 (*aloali'i*); II 444, III 113 (*anoalo*); II 375 (cf. 372–3), 376 (*Atamaioali'i*); III 144–5, 146–7: orators related to chiefs (Rarotonga), III 51–2; (Samoa), I 74, II 16, 20, III 143–4, 145–6, 345; (Society), II 488; (*iatoai*), II 42, 385–6, 389–90, III 148–9; (Tonga), II 479 (*matabule*), II 37–9, 379, 380, 382, 481, III 141–2: orators related to chiefs, and becoming chiefs, Futuna, I 365 (king's minister); Samoa, II 377 (the *uso-ali'i*); Society, II 390 (the *iatoai*); ? Tonga, III 142 (*matabule*); *see also* Samoa, same man candidate for the chief's name or orator's name of his family, II 368, 369, and members of same family bearing chief's name and orator's name, III 144, 146: orators related to lesser orators? *see* Samoa, *tulafale ali'i* taking *tulafale* name, II 367, 368–9; Society, *iatoai* related to *ra'atira*, II 390–1, III 148, 149; Tonga, *matabule* related to *mua*, II 37–8, 382, III 141–2: orators related to lower classes, Samoa? (*tulafale* and *faleupolu*), III 147; Tonga (*mua* and *tua*), II 37–8, 382, III 141–2: priests related to chiefs (Marquesas), II 429, III 52, 54; (Paumotu), III 52; (Samoa), I 52 and *n. 1*, III 48; (Society), I 188, 205, II 415, 421, III 43, 50, 51, 53
- Cloth: with animal designs, on canoes (Samoa), II 317–18, cf. 320: clan designs on, II 325 (Aitutaki); 323–4 (Mangaia); 321? (Samoa); 321–2 (Tonga); cf. Easter Is. II 327–8, clan feather-hats: clan garment taboo to outsiders, II 325 (Aitutaki); II 323, cf. 324 (Mangaia): given by king to *areoi* and chiefs at feast (Society), III 356: gods immanent in? II 320 (Samoa); 252 (Tonga): invocation, and cloth of god (Tikopia), II 300: as peace emblem (Tahiti), II 343: worn by king on arm, at turtle ceremony (Fotuna), II 293
- Clubs: men's (chief's followers?), Marquesas, II 326; *see also* *Areoi*: of village girls (Samoa), *see* *Aualuma* and *Taupou*
- Coconut leaves: always included in offerings to gods (Rotuma), II 290: as district badges on canoes (Samoa), II 317; cf. Mangaia, I 253–4, II 273, 324 and *n. 4*, leaf symbol of Mokoiro: emblems of authority, royal insignia? (Fotuna), II 293; (Society), II 487, III 19; (Tikopia), II 300, cf. kava leaf, Rarotonga, I 265: emblems of Nafanua, worn by worshippers in battle (Samoa), II 241, 320: ends of (emblem), used for fanning sick (Samoa), II 228, 250: leaf-basket emblem, as war omen (Samoa), II 241, 249–5: representing land-owner (taboo sign?), Mangaia, III 289: sinnet plaited by orators at *fono* (Samoa), II 460, III 9: sinnet-work emblems of gods (Hervey), II 43, 271, 272: as taboo sign, connection with Nafanua (Samoa), II 241, 320, and *n. 2*: as taboo sign, in semblance of shark-god (Tonga), II 260: widows wearing head-coverings of, (Ongtong Java) II 302
- trees: allotted to (adopted) strangers, III 281 (Niue); 281, 319 (Penrhyn): belonging to dead, taboo (Penrhyn), III 319: as boundary marks, III 316? (Funafuti); 309 (Rotuma): common and individual ownership of, III 310–11, 312–13 (Rotuma); 279–81, 284–5 (Society); 319? (Tikopia): eating fruit of neighbour's tree, III 315, 316, 318 (Funafuti); 319 (Tikopia): individual ownership of, III 316 (Funafuti); 319 (New Hebrides); 304, 305 (Niue); 303, 304 (Paumotu): introduction of, and individual ownership of land (Funafuti), III 317: origin, derived from head of eel (Hervey), II 274; (New Hebrides), II 303; (Paumotu), II 284; (Samoa), II 233, 234, III 253; (Society), II 267, cf. *pappaw* deriving from blood of lizard, II 268–9: origin, derived from sea (Rotuma), II 290: origin, introduced from Gilberts (Funafuti), III 315, 317: planted annually by family head (Samoa), III 323; cf. Rotuma, III 310–11: planting of, and title to land? (Niue), III 304, 305: separate ownership of land and, III 319 (New Hebrides); 310–11, 312 (Rotuma); 279–80, 281–2, 284–5 (Society): stranger inheriting life use of, (Rotuma) III 311: tenant not controlling, (Rotuma) III 309, 313
- water (or oil): as conductor of taboo, etc. *see under* Taboo: libation offered to god (Paumotu), II 287
- Coconuts: divination by? (Mangaia), II 426; (New Hebrides), III 30–1; (Samoa), III 6, *see also* II 473 (*aitu-fono*); (Tonga), III 15: gods immanent in (Samoa), II 219, 226; (Tikopia), II 299, cf. III 341: regulation of consumption of, III 341 (Ellice); 340 (Fotuna); 323, 324 (Samoa); 341–2 (Tikopia); 326 (Tonga): swearing innocence by coconut cup (Samoa), III 5–6: used as war oracle (Mangaia), II 426
- Coffin patterns, and sacred fish (Marquesas), II 281–2
- Conception, miraculous (Rotuma), II 291, 307
- Conch shell: emblem of god, carried with troops (Samoa), II 320: emblem of Rongo (Mangaia), II 271: emblems of gods, war omens (Samoa), II 249, 250, cf. Mangaia, III 36: swearing innocence

INDEX

413

- by (Samoa), III 5-6: on war canoes, emblems of gods (Samoa), II 320
- — — sounding of: to announce approach of chief (Samoa), II 372-3: to assemble council (Mangaia), II 489: to assemble the people (Ellice), III 362: to assemble warriors (Marquesas), I 317, II 350: on death of sacred king (and on annual "death" of god), Fiji, I 346: sounded by chief's "jester" (Samoa), II 372, 372-3 (cf. 375): sounded by head chief (Marquesas), I 317, II 350: sounded by sacred king (Mangaia), II 271, 489, cf. Rarotonga, I 265
- "Conquering race" theory, *see under* Origin and migrations
- Consultation of gods, etc.: *aitu-fono* before great *fono* (Samoa), II 473-4: by chiefs (Tonga), III 42: by head or member of family (Tonga), II 256, III 50: incarnation of god imparting information (Tonga), II 256, III 50, *see also* Omens: *re* proposed expeditions, etc. (Ellice), II 439: before war, II 290, cf. 438 (Rotuma); 425 (Society)
- Continence, turtle ceremonies involving, (Paumotu) II 286, cf. Marquesas, II 282, III 37
- Corpse: of chief, hidden (Tahiti), III 155: of chief, possession entitling enemy to chief's name and land, III 155, 159, 227 (Tahiti), cf. Marquesas, 156, 227: exposed in *marae*, II 60: kava people cherishing, I 7: kept apart from living by dual people, I 7: orientation (Mangaian god), I 251-2; (Samoa), II 161: women touching, taboo (Tonga), II 195-6
- Council greetings, *see under* Greetings
- Councillors: ceremonies conducted by, (Samoa) III 102; (Tonga), II 38, 380, 381, 382: chief having special councillor, etc. (Niue), II 402; (Samoa), II 372-3, cf. 375, 374-5?; (Society), II 482, III 123: as craftsmen, II 378 (Samoa); 384 (Tonga): dividing food at feasts, *see under* Food, distribution, etc.: (or council) governing, etc. *see under* Government, and various headings under Administration, etc.: great councillors having own following (Samoa), II 454, 457, III 108; (Society, *ra'atira*), II 390, 391-2, 484, III 276; cf. Tonga, II 382, *matabule* not having retinue?: heads of families (Ellice), II 496; (Niue), II 401, 493, III 26, 60 n. 1, 335; (Rotuma), I 357, II 403, 495, III 60 n. 1, 134; (Rarotonga), II 490?; (Samoa), II 15, 369-70, 442, 444-5, 447, 450, 454, III 60, 101, 143, 144, 147-8; (Society), II 388-9?, 486, III 60 n. 1; (Tikopia), II 404; (Tokelau), I 374, II 496, III 60 n. 1, 135; (Uvea), II 496, III 60 n. 1, 135: as landowners, *see under* Land: as messengers, *see under* Messengers: minor chiefs (Niue, *patu*), II 401-2; (Rarotonga, *mataiapo*), I 270, 272, II 362; (Samoa, *tulafale*), II 357, 359, 366; (Society, *iatoai*), II 42, 386, 387, 388, 389, III 17, 123, 199; (Society, *ra'atira*), I 181, II 384, 385, 390, III 51, 121, cf. II 390-1, III 148-9; (Tonga, *matabule*), I 133, II 38, 379, 380, 480-1, III 50, 141; *see also* Samoa, *tulafale ali'i* co-ordinate with chiefs, II 359, 367, 368, III 103, cf. II 358; and *see* Society, II 488, 489, chiefs as orators: office hereditary (Rarotonga, *mataiapo*), III 202, cf. 127; (Samoa), II 90, 369, III 46, 176, cf. II 15, 31; (Society, *iatoai*), II 42, 387, 388, III 17; (Tikopia), II 404; (Tonga, *matabule*), II 380, 475: old men (Fotuna), III 135, cf. I 368; ? (Mangaia), II 489, III 126-7, 287; (Marquesas), III 131; (Tokelau), I 373, III 395; (Tonga), II 380: old men, leading councillors called *matua* (Rotuma), I 357 and n. 10; (Samoa), II 149, 442, 465, 470, 473, cf. 151; (Tonga), II 478, 480, III 186, 188, 190, 192: the "pillars" of chiefs, *see under* Seating in assembly house: provisioning chiefs, guests, *see under* Food offerings, etc. and Food for guests: as priests, *see under* Priests: as servants of chiefs, *see under* Servants, etc.: as tradition-keepers, *see under* Traditions, etc. official recorders: as warriors (Niue), II 401; (Society, *iatoai*), II 387, 388, III 17, cf. *ra'atira*, II 483; (Tonga, *mua*), II 382; *see also* Samoa, orators "protecting" area, etc. II 469, 470, and *Alataua*, orator chiefs, etc.; *also* Tikopia, II 404
- (Niue), the *patu*, II 401, 402, 493, 494: *see also under* Councillors above and Councils
- ?(Rarotonga): the *mataiapo*, restraining power of chief, III 127; the *mataiapo*, I 270, 272, II 362, 393-4, 395, III 127, 202: *see also* the *rangatira*, II 394, 395: *see also under* Councillors above, and Council meetings
- (Rotuma): the *mathua*, I 357, II 403-4: the *pure*, I 357, II 403, 495, III 134: *see also under* Councillors above, Councils, and Council meetings
- (Samoa): district orators, II 366, 367, 447: the *faleupolu*, II 32, 370, 442, 450-1: family orators, II 367, 445, 446: and mat-distributions, *see under* Mats: more powerful than chief, III 100, 101, 103, 104, *see also* II 366, III 101, chief not acting against advice of councillors: relative powers of chief and, varying, III 102, 103, 104, 107-8, 397-8, *see also* III 103, chief's influence on decisions: the servants of chief, II 366, 372, 374,

- 376, III 102, 103, 104, cf. Councillors, Tonga: the *tulafale*, meaning of term, II 367, III 248: the *tulafale*, II 12, 90, 366-7, 369-70, 442, 444-6, 449, 450, 451, 454, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460 *sqq.*, 471, III 176, 185: *tulafale ali'i*, holding chief's names and orator-names, II 367, 368-9: *tulafale ali'i*, power, II 367, 468, III 48-9, 103: *tulafale ali'i*, privileges at *fono*, II 374-5, 459-60, III 46, 145: the *tulafale ali'i*, II 12 *sqq.*, 149, 367-9, 442, 449, 454, 456-7, 459 *sqq.*, 473-4, III 46-9, 176-7, 179-80, 185: village orators, II 366, 445, 447: *see also under* Councillors *above*, Councils, Samoa, and Council meetings
- (Society): the *iatoai*, members of the *hiva*, II 42, 387, 388, III 123, 199: *iatoai* ranking above *ra'atira*, II 42, 489: *iatoai*, the "spars" of the "canoe," II 389-90: *iatoai* unable to attend, represented by relation, II 388, cf. 387: *ra'atira* never becoming *ari'i*, II 390-1, III 148-9: *ra'atira*, the "ropes" keeping up "mast," II 390: *see also under* Councillors *above*, Councils, Society, and Council meetings
- (Tikopia), the *pure matua*, II 404: *see also under* Councillors *above*
- (Tonga): *matabule* as chiefs' counsellors, ministers and companions, II 38, 380, 480, III 49, 141: *matabule*, meaning of term, II 380-1: *matabule*, rank in society, II 379-80: *matabule* as servants of chiefs, II 380, 382, 383, cf. Councillors, Samoa: ? the *mua*, II 37, 38-9, 379-80, 381, 382, 383, III 141: the *mua* assisting at ceremonies, II 39, 381, 382, III 141: the *mua*, retainers of great and minor chiefs, II 38-9, 382, 383: *see also under* Councillors *above*, Councils, and Council meetings
- Council meetings: II 441-96; 496 (Ellice); 495 (Fotuna); 489-90 (Hervey); 490-3 (Marquesas); 493-4 (Niue); 494-5 (Rotuma); 441-74 (Samoa); 482-9 (Society); 474-82 (Tonga); 496 (Tokelau); 496 (Uvea): admonishment of young chiefs at (Tonga), II 475: *aitu-fono* at Leulumoenga before great *fono* (Samoa), II 82, 473-4, III 46-7, 110-11, cf. chiefs consulting Fe'e, II 474, 46, 110-11: of all Samoa (except Manu'a), I 40, II 447, 448, 449: *re* canoe-building, etc. (Samoa), II 447; (Tonga), II 475: common people having no part in (Samoa), II 445, cf. 446: consultation by family heads before (Samoa), III 102-3, cf. 108-9: consultation of people by chief before (Rotuma), II 495, III 134: of districts (Samoa), II 7, 446, 472-3, III 178, 323: of districts (or divisions), Samoa, II 448: of divisions (Samoa), II 446-7, 448, *see also under* place-
- names*: duration (Samoa), II 459, 472: each sub-area, etc. having, (Samoa) I 40: *re* election of king, etc. (Fotuna), II 495; (Niue), II 494; (Rotuma), II 495; (Samoa), II 448, III 178, *see also* Inauguration: etiquette observed at (Tonga), II 478, 480, 482: *fono* of all Samoa held at Leulumoenga, I 40, II 448, 464: *fono* held at divisional capitals (Samoa), II 12, 13, 14, 448; *see also under* Leulumoenga, etc.: food at, *see under* Food, and Food, distribution, etc.: of the gods (Samoa), I 51, 100-1, cf. II 83, *see also* Mangaia, I 251: held in assembly house (Samoa), II 82, 451; (Society), II 486; (Tokelau), I 374, II 496: held in assembly house and *marae*, II 448 (Samoa); 476-7, 478 (Tonga): held in chief's house, II 491-2, 492-3 (Marquesas); 447 (Samoa): held in the *koutu* (Rarotonga), II 76, 490: held in or near *marae*, II 441; (Hervey), II 489-90, III 51-2; (Samoa), II 451; (Society), I 207; II 486; (Tonga), II 476: held in open air, II 491 (Marquesas); 493, 494 (Niue); 482-3, 486 (Society): inspiration of chiefs and priests at? (Tahiti), II 484, III 124: inspiration of orator-chief at? (Samoa), II 460, III 46, 47, *see also* *aitu-fono* *above*: kava drinking at, (Samoa), II 448, 471-2; (Tonga), II 478: large meetings (Mangaia), I 263, II 489, 490, III 126; (Marquesas), I 317, II 490-1, 492, III 128, 129; (Niue), II 80, 493, 494, III 26; (Rarotonga), II 490, cf. 77-9, III 127-8; (Rotuma), II 495; (Society), II 482-4, 485-6; (Tonga), II 474-5, 476-9, III 325: laws repeated at (Samoa), II 447-8: of Manu'a, *see under* Manu'a: *marae* cleared before, (Samoa) II 458: merely for issuing chief's orders? (Tonga), II 474-6, 477-8, 479-80, 481-2, III 119-20, 325: not merely for issuing orders (Society), II 484-5: offering thanks to village god at, (Samoa) II 447: persons present at (Hervey), I 263, II 489-90, III 126, 127-8, cf. II 77-9, 490; (Marquesas), II 490-1, 492, III 128-9; (Niue), II 80, 493, III 26; (Samoa), II 7, 450, 458 and *n.* I, 459, cf. II 22-3, 462-3; (Society), II 483, 485, III 124; (Tonga), II 474, 475, 476, 477-9, III 325: planting arrangements discussed at, (Samoa) II 447; (Tonga), II 474, 475: privileges of orator-chiefs at, (Samoa) II 374-5, 459-60, III 145: road in front of house taboo to strangers during, (Samoa) II 458: silence imposed at, (Samoa) II 447, 462: sinnet plaited by orators at, (Samoa) II 460, III 9: small meetings held by minor chiefs (Niue), II 493-4; (Rarotonga), II 490; III 128?; (Rotuma), II 494-5, III 134, cf. I 357; (Tonga), II

INDEX

415

- 475, 482, III 325: substance of speeches known beforehand (Samoa), III 102-3: taboo to women (Samoa), II 447: terms for, II 493 (Niue); 495 (Rotuma); 441 (Samoa); 482, 483 (Society); 474 (Tonga): of village-districts (Samoa), II 7, 12, 446: of villages (Samoa), II 7, 446, 447-8, III 178, 323: *re* war, ? (Fotuna), III 58; (Marquesas), II 491, 492, III 128-9; (Samoa), II 448, 472-3, III 178; (Society), II 482, 483, 484, 486, III 124; *see also* under Councils of chiefs, Niue, Samoa, Society: *see also* Seating, etc.
- persons presiding at: head chief, ? II 490, cf. 77-9 (Rarotonga); ? 488 (Society); 12, 444 (Samoa): head of group, III 398: heads of sub-groups, etc. presiding at sub-area councils (Samoa), II 7: no one presiding? (Rarotonga), II 490: orators of district summoning meeting (Samoa), II 12, 460: sacred king, ? (Easter Is.), III 135-6; (Rotuma), I 357 *n.* 9; (Uvea), I 371: secular king (Rotuma), I 357: Tangaroa as head of *fono* (Niue), I 349
- speeches and spokesmen: chief speaking (Society), II 483, 488, III 122; (Tonga), II 475, 476: chief speaking through orator, III 58, cf. 398; (Rarotonga), II 490, III 51-2; (Rotuma), I 357 *n.* 9, II 495; (Samoa), II 8, 12, 366, 445, 451; (Society), II 488-9, cf. 484; (Tonga), II 478-9, 480, 481: family heads speaking (Samoa), II 450; (Uvea), II 496: *iatoai* speaking? (Society), II 489: *matabule* speaking (Tonga), II 475, III 49, 141: orator-chiefs taking orator names in order to speak at *fono*, II 367, 368-9: *orero* speaking (Society), II 423-4, 488: *ra'atira* speaking (Society), II 483, 484, 485, 489, III 122: sister etc. of chief, having voice, (Samoa) II 104, 166: speeches definitely sequenced (Samoa), II 460-1, III 47, cf. II 12, 465, 473-4: speeches, eloquence of, (Samoa) II 471; (Tonga), II 478: spokesman councillors (for each section), Samoa, II 7, 445-6, 450-1, *see also* special orators speaking, Society, II 423-4, 483, 484, 488-9, and Tonga, II 478, 480-2: spokesman prompted, etc. (Samoa), II 471: spokesman rights disputed (ceremonially) by orator-council (Samoa), II 461-2
- summoning of: by head chief (Tonga), II 474-5, 476, III 325: head chief summoning group (Marquesas), II 491, 492, III 128-9, cf. I 317, 322; (Tahiti), I 229, II 485-6, 487, III 122; *see also* Rarotonga, king holding meetings, III 127-8: by orators, for chief or king (Samoa), II 12: by orators of leading village-district concerned (Samoa), II 12, 14, 449: by sacred king (Mangaia), I 263, II 489, III 126
- Councils: acting as magistrates, making laws, etc. *see various headings under* Administration of Justice: banishing chiefs, *see under* Banishment: deposing chiefs, etc. *see under* Deposition and Titles, etc.: electing chiefs, etc. *see under* Election, and Titles, etc.: election of chief by administrative councils (Fotuna), I 363, II 495, III 205; (Rotuma), II 495; (Samoa), I 85, II 14-17, 21, 31, III 176, cf. II 366; (Tahiti, *hiva*), II 42, 387-8, cf. III 17; *see also* Tonga, *kau matua*, II 477, and III 186, cf. III 190: heads of families not chief's delegates, III 58-9, 60: relative powers of heads of groups and, III 397-8: (Ellice)? king consulting, I 379: (Fotuna), "old men" more powerful than king or chiefs, III 135: (Mangaia), relative powers of chief and "elders," II 489, 490, III 126-7: (Niue) chiefs and family heads composing village councils, II 401, 493, cf. 494, III 26: (Niue) nothing done without, II 493: (Rotuma), chief and family heads composing district council, I 357, II 54, 494-5: (Rotuma), family heads able to oppose chief, II 495, III 134: (Tonga), *matabule* carrying out chief's orders, II 380: (Tonga), *matabule* composing, II 380: (Uvea), consulted by king, I 370, II 496, III 135
- (Samoa): called *faleupolu*, II 321, 442, 451, 468, III 144, 145: called *tootoo* in Manu'a, II 442: council of district, II 11, 442, 447, III 101: council of district, consulted by chief, II 445, III 103, cf. 108-9: council of division, II 11: council of division, consulted by king, III 103, cf. 108-9: council of village, II 11, 446-7, III 101: council of village, village head consulting family heads, III 103, cf. II 447: council of village-district, II 11, 442, 446-7: councils composed of chiefs and family heads, II 369, 445-6, 447, 450, III 101: families represented in, forming the local inhabitants, II 12, cf. 15, 22: families represented in, related to head chief, II 15-17, 21-2, III 171-5, *see also* II 32, councils called Salemuliana: family consulted by family head, III 207-8, 237-8, *see also* clan branches abroad consulted, II 8 *n.* 1, 17, 22, 27-8, 30, 331: and food supply, *see under* Food supply, control, etc.: granting titles, etc. *see under* Titles, etc.: the orator "houses," II 442, *see also under* Leulumoenga, etc.: relative powers of chief and, *see under* Councillors, Samoa: *see also* Councils above
- (Society): the *hiva* and "canoe" idea,

- II 389: *hiva*, collective term for *iatoai*, II 42, 387, 388, III 123, 199, *see also* Councillors, Society: *hiva* consulted by district chief, III 121, 123-4: a *hiva* for each district, II 387, 388, III 123: the *hiva* electing and deposing chiefs, *see under* Election and Deposition: the *hiva*, parliamentary and magisterial functions, II 387-8, 489, III 17, 123-4, 199: the members of the *hiva* as warriors, II 387, 388, III 17: *ra'atira* consulted by king *re* war, etc. II 390, 482-3, 484, III 121, 122, 125: *ra'atira* imposing will on chief, II 483-4: *see also* Councils *above*
- of chiefs: consulted by “king” (Easter Is.), I 388, 395, III 136; (Ellice), I 378, ? 380, II 496; (Fotuna), I 363, II 495, III 134, 205; (Hervey), I 263, II 489, 490, III 126, 127-8, cf. II 77-9, 490; (Marquesas), I 317, 322, II 490-1, 492, III 129; (Niue), II 80? cf. II 493; (Rotuma), II 495 (*sou* and *fakpure*); ? (Tokelau), I 374, II 496
- — — (Niue), *see* war council, II 493, III 26; *also* II 401-2
- — — (Samoa): in Aana, called *faleaana*, II 443, III 112, 170: in Aana, composed of *aloali'i*, ? II 443, III 112, *see also* *aloali'i*, and *usoali'i* *below*: in Aana, consulted by *tuiaana*, II 443, III 112: the *aloali'i* consulted by *tuiaana* *re* government, III 112: *aloali'i* consulted by *tuiaana* *re* war, II 443, III 112, 113, 116: *aloali'i*, descendants of *tuiaana* Ngalumalemana, II 443, III 112, 171: *aloali'i*, influence *re* election of *tuiaana*, III 112: *aloali'i* influencing Leulumoenga council, III 112: in Atua, called *faleatua*, II 443, III 113, 170: in Atua, consulted by *tuiaatua*, II 443-4, III 113: in Atua, midnight *fono* *re* war, III 113: the *faletui*, and consultative power of king, III 114-15: *faletui* distinct from orator councils, II 443, III 111: the *faletui*, etc. influence *re* title-granting, II 15, 112, 113, 170-1, 177: *faletui* as war councils, II 443, cf. 448, 472-3, III 111, 113, 115-16, 170-1: in Manu'a, called *anoalo*, II 444, III 113, 170: in Manu'a, chiefs' descent from *tuimanu'a* f., II 444, III 113: in Manu'a, consulted by *tuimanu'a*, II 444, III 113, 116: in Manu'a, influence *re* title-granting, III 113: in Tuamasaanga?, III 113-14, 116: *usoali'i*, candidates for title, II 377, III 111: the *usoali'i*, chief's “brothers,” II 377, III 111, 114: *usoali'i* consulted by chief, II 377, III 114-15, 170-1: *usoali'i*, influence *re* title-granting, II 15, 377, III 111, 170-1, 175, 177, 184
- — — (Society): and consultative power of king, III 124: consulted *re* war by king, II 483, 486, III 123, 124: district chiefs restraining king, II 483, III 121: Teva chiefs meeting at *marae*, II 486, III 123, 162-3: ? *see also* Councils, Society, the *hiva*
- — — (Tonga): consulted by king, II 477, 478, 480: electing king (secular), *see under* Election: restraining *tuikano-kubolu*, III 118-19, cf. high chiefs thwarting *tuitonga*, I 153, III 117, 119
- Cousins: included as “brothers” and “sisters,” *see under* Brother, and Sister: term for (Paumotu), II 204
- not allowed to marry: cousins-german (Samoa), II 127, cf. 127-8, 136: descendants of two brothers, II 140 (Marquesas); 146 (New Hebrides); 143 (Rotuma); ? 125, 126, ? 127-8, ? 134 (Samoa); ? 136 (Tonga); cf. Niue, II 142-3, descendants of two brothers marrying: descendants of two sisters, II 140 (Marquesas); 146 (New Hebrides); 142-3 (Niue); 143 (Rotuma); ? 125, ? 127-8, ? 134 (Samoa); ? 136 (Tonga): first cousins (Society), II 138: first cousins sometimes forbidden to marry (Niue), II 143; *see also* cousins in remote degrees allowed to marry, II 144-5 (Easter Is.); 139 (Hervey); 146 (Penrhyn): *also* Samoa, II 126, marriage taboo between man and daughter of son of agnate of grandfather
- cross-cousins: allowed to marry if living in different “clans” (Samoa), II 127, 130, 132-5: marriage taboo between brother and sister and their descendants? (Samoa), II 125, 127-8: not injuring or speaking ill of each other (Tikopia), II 211, cf. 212
- cross-cousins in 1st degree: allowed to marry, II 141-2 (Fiji); 140 (Marquesas); 146 (New Hebrides); 142 (Niue): allowed to marry sometimes (Tonga), II 136: cross-cousins (by both parents) marrying (Society), II 137-8: marriage obligations, II 141-2 (Fiji), *see also* Marquesas, II 140-2, and Tonga, II 136: marriage of, taboo, II ? 127, 143, 144 (Rotuma); 126, ? 127, cf. 127-8, ? 134, ? 136 (Samoa); cf. Tikopia, II 209-10
- cross-cousins in remote degrees, allowed to marry, II 127, 143-4 (Rotuma); 127, cf. 134, 136 (Samoa); 135-6 (Tonga)
- Crime and punishment: adultery, *see that title*: atonement, acceptance of (Samoa), III 4; *see also* Fines: crime an infringement of taboo (Tonga), II 340, III 15: crimes provocative of war punished by offenders' people (Hervey), III 23; (Niue), III 27; (Samoa), III 5: culprit banished, *see under* Banishment: culprit biting poisonous root, etc. (Samoa), III 12: culprit mutilated (Samoa), III 12:

INDEX

417

- culprit's property devastated, etc. (Samoa), II 338; III 4, 8–10, 345; (Society), III 19: culprits set adrift in leaky canoes (Tonga), III 15–16: culprits used as victims, *see under* Human sacrifice, victims: death penalty (Bukabuka), III 30; (Ellice), III 29; (Fotuna), III 28; (Hervey), III 23–4; (Manihiki), III 30; (Marquesas), III 26; (Niue), III 27; (Paumotu), III 26, 360; (Samoa), II 338, III 11, 12; (Sikiana), III 30; (Society), III 16–17, 19, 20, 21; (Tikopia), III 30; (Tokelau), III 28: family, etc. suffering for guilt of individual (Mangaia), II 349, III 23; (Paumotu), II 352–3; ? (Rotuma), III 44; (Uvea), II 353–4; cf. culprit or relations punished indifferently (Hervey), II 348; (Marquesas), II 351; (New Hebrides), II 354; (Samoa), II 338: injured man and his group compensated (Samoa), II 338: injury to individual avenged by group (Rarotonga), II 349; (Marquesas), II 351; (New Hebrides), II 354; (Paumotu), II 352; (Tahiti), II 344; (Uvea), II 353–4; cf. Easter Is. III 29: insulting chief, III 11, 103, 106 (Samoa); 17, 20 (Society): invoking death of thief (Samoa), III 6, 7: murder, *see that title*: personal punishment, III 29 (Easter Is.); 28 (Fotuna); 31 (New Hebrides); 8, 12–13 (Samoa); 21 (Society): symbolic sacrifice of offenders (Samoa), III 5, cf. 11–12: theft, *see that title*
- Cursing: by father, and idea of family head as family priest, II 101–2, III 41 *and n. 4*: father's curse, potency (Samoa), II 102 *and n. 1*, 126–7: father's sister cursed by brother's son (Tingilau), Samoa, II 230: father's sister's curse causing illness, etc. to brother's child? II 211, 212 (Tikopia); 163, 183, 184–5 (Tonga): by high-priest (Tahiti), I 205: king's curse causing death (Easter Is.), I 399, III 45, *see also* Borabora, III 34: mischief-maker cursed (Samoa), II 333: sister's curse, *see that title*: thief cursed by sorcerer (Samoa), II 407: water-sprinkling removing curse (Samoa), II 101
- Cuttlefish: aiding Ationgie's sons to move stone (Samoa), I 72, II 251: (as god), calling out before war (Samoa), II 250: (as god), not eaten, II 298 (Tikopia); 293 (Tokelau); 259 (Tonga); 294 (Tongareva); cf. Easter Is. eating cuttlefish causing madness, II 296: (as god), not killed (Tonga), II 253: (as god), mock human sacrifice on eating (Samoa), II 248: (as god), physical peculiarities respected (Samoa), II 246: (as god), worshipped (Tonga), II 259: gods incarnate in, II 275, 276 (Rarotonga); 220–1, 223–4, 231, 246, 248, 250, 319, 333 (Samoa); 298, 299 (Tikopia); 293 (Tokelau); 252, 253, 259 (Tonga); 294 (Tongareva): gods incarnate in, not connected (Samoa), II 230–1: keeping sky and earth together (Ra'iatea), I 184: one of most frequent forms of incarnation (Samoa), II 221: Tahiti as, I 183–4, II 138, 265: not worshipped (Mangaia), II 275
- Dances: before egg race (Easter Is.), I 406: part of invocation ceremony (Ongtong Java), II 301, *see also* exorcising ceremony, Tongareva, II 295: sacred king not taking part in, (Mangaia) I 256: *see also* dancers and singers (*areoi*), (Marquesas), II 398–9; (Society), III 354
- Danger Island, *see* Bukabuka
- Dates, computation of time, etc. *see under* Time, etc.
- Daughter: (adopted), term (Paumotu), II 204: father sometimes living with, (Marquesas), II 202: term for, II 207 (Fotuna); 201 (Marquesas); 204 (Paumotu); 150 (Samoa); 199 (Society); 179 (Tonga) (w.s. and m.s.), different terms used, II 150 (Samoa); 179 (Tonga); *see also under* Son, and Child belonging to either parent: (w.s.) term including sister's daughters, II 207 (Fotuna); 150 (Samoa); 179 (Tonga)
- Daughter-in-law: called "mother" (Tikopia), II 209: called "niece" (New Hebrides), II 213: same term for son-in-law and, II 202 (Marquesas); 206 (Niue); 200 (Society); ? 210 (Tikopia): term for, II 205 (Paumotu); 210 (Tikopia)
- Daughter's husband: called "father" (Tikopia), II 209: called "nephew" (New Hebrides), II 213: term for (Tikopia), II 210
- Dead, cult of the: ancestor gods represented by human bone images (Marquesas), II 352: the dead instructing priests and sorcerers (Paumotu), II 436–7: the dead killing persons marked for vengeance (Paumotu), II 436: the dead protecting priests and sorcerers (Paumotu), II 436–7: dead relations punishing family quarrels with illness (Tahiti), II 343, cf. New Hebrides, II 354: dead *tuitonga* procuring good crops, III 351; cf. the *mua*, Rotuma, III 336–7, 339 *n. 2*: the *kalou-vu* (Fiji), question of Polynesian origin, I 112–13: libations to dead predecessors at inauguration of *sou* (Rotuma), III 336: and Polynesian totemism, II 217–18, 245, 261, 315–16: religion of kava people based on, I 7: worship of dead ancestors, Tikopia, II 299: worship of the dead, ? II 438 (Fotuna); 438 (Uvea): *see also under the* Dead, spirits returning, and Deification of chiefs

W III

27

- gods of, *see* Gods of the dead
- souls of: climbing tribal branch of tree (Mangaia), III 299–300: common people having no souls (Tonga), II 396: eaten by clan-god? (Tonga-iti), Mangaia, II 273: eaten by god? (Moso), Samoa, III 6, *see also* Rotuma, II 290, gods eating dead men, *and* cf. I 103, Manu'ans eating the dead: going to Avaiki, *see under* Avaiki: going to spots on or above earth, I 7, 302–3, *see also* Paradise: going through volcanic vents, I 7, 302: going west, suggestive of migration from west, I 3: plunging into the sea from west of Savai'i, I 95, cf. 102: as posts in house of god, *see* “pillars,” *under* Seating in Assembly house
- spirits returning: in animal, etc. form, II 304–16: in animal etc. form of god worshipped in life? (Tahiti), II 306, cf. 315–16: in animal, etc. form, and “totemism,” II 261, 315–16: animal, etc. forms, sacred (Tonga), II 306: animal, etc. forms, worshipped by relations (Samoa), II 304; cf. Tikopia, II 299, 308: as animals, II 307 (Marquesas); 307 (Rotuma); 304, 305, 315 (Samoa); 306 (Tahiti): animals, etc. entered by children, fed by mothers (Tahiti), II 306: in birds, II 307, 316 (Fotuna); 306, 315 (Mangaia); 302, 308, 316 (Ongtong Java); 307, 315 (Paumotu); 290, 307 (Rotuma); 304, 305 (Samoa); 253, cf. 252, 306 (Tonga): burial of insect, etc. entered, II 307, 316 (Fotuna); 307, 316 (Niue); 304–5, cf. 308, 316 (Samoa): as clouds (Mangaia), II 306: in fish, II 306, 315 (Mangaia); 302, 308 (Ongtong Java); 307 (Rotuma); 267, 306 (Tahiti); 253, 306 (Tonga): in form of stones (Samoa), II 304: in human form, II 307 (Rotuma); 304 (Samoa): in insects, II 307, 316 (Fotuna); 306, 315 (Mangaia); 307, 315 (Marquesas); 307, 315–16 (Niue); 305, 315, 316 (Samoa); 306, 315, 316 (Tahiti); *see also* Easter Is. II 308, dead chief entering butterfly; Marquesas, II 306–7, 315, souls of priests as moths; Ra'iatea, II 306, 315, 316, souls of dead turning into cockroaches: inspiring men and women (Uvea), II 438–9: in plant form (Samoa), II 304: in reptiles, II 307, 316 (Fotuna); 307 (Rotuma); 305 (Samoa): not returning in animals? (Tokelau), II 308: spirits of children killed at birth (Tahiti), II 306, 316: spirits of drowned men, II 304 (Samoa); 306 (Tahiti): spirits feared, II 307 (Paumotu); 305 (Samoa): spirits of men dying violently (Samoa), II 305: spirits of slain, II 307 (Fotuna); 306, 315 (Mangaia); 304 (Samoa): spirits of unburied dead (Samoa), II 305
- Death: cause of, *see* Illness (and death), cause: omens of, *see under* Omens: “totem” appearing before, *see under* Incarnation, etc.
- Dedication of child: to clan god (Hervey), II 118: to family god (Samoa), II 228, III 151, cf. II 219: to father's or mother's god (Hervey), II 118; (Samoa), II 106–7, III 151: to god addressed at moment of birth (Samoa), II 106–7, III 151: to god of parent not devoted to sacrifice (Hervey), II 118: to more than one god? (Hervey), II 118: Tangaroa or Tane besought to preserve child (Paumotu), I 340: *see also* child bearing name of its god (Samoa), II 228, III 151, *and* child named after “totem”-god? (Uvea), II 293, cf. III 151
- Deification of men (after death): chiefs (Marquesas), I 317, 324, III 69; (Ongtong Java), I 414, III 72; (Rotuma), II 288, cf. III 44; (Samoa), II 219; ? (Tonga), II 252; (Uvea), II 438; *see also* (Hervey), Kaukura, I 265, Motoro, II 271, Tiaio, I 259; (Marquesas), Taipii chiefess, II 350, Tana Manaoa, III 159–60; (Paumotu), Munanui, I 337; (Rotuma), Rahou, II 289; (Samoa), Taisumalie, II 239; (Tonga), daughters of *tuihatakala*, I 148, cf. 149: offerings to dead woman before eel-fishing (Paumotu), II 284–5: priests (Marquesas), II 326, 428, 429
- (during life): the *atua* (Marquesas), II 362, 397, 428, III 84–5, 331: chiefs personating or representing gods (Fotuna), I 365; (Marquesas), III 85; (Samoa), III 74; (Society), III 34, 77–8; (Tonga), I 158, 162, 167, II 192, III 350: chiefs' titles showing connection with gods (Society), III 78–9: god entering chief at inauguration, II 111, III 227; cf. Samoa, III 40–1; Society, I 219, III 77, *and* Tonga, III 76: god entering head of family, II 101–2, *see also under* Firstborn: god incarnate in king (Fotuna), I 363, 421, III 38, 340; (Samoa), II 239, III 64; (Tonga), I 151, 166, cf. III 75–6: god incarnate in member of family (Taisumalie), Samoa, II 239–40: gods incarnate in men and women (Samoa), II 239, 240, 251: the king as god, etc. (Easter Is.), I 395, 401, 403, III 88; (Ellice), III 88; (Fiji), III 92; (Mangareva), III 37, 87, 132; (Rotuma), I 358, III 337; (Samoa), III 73; (Society), I 219, III 34, 77, 78; (Tokelau), III 88; (Tonga, *tuitonga*), I 151, 166, 167, III 75, cf. II 255, 311, 313; *see also the ali'i paia*, Samoa, II 357–8, III 40, 41, 73: priest as god (Samoa), II 240: *see also* Inspiration and Inspired persons

INDEX

419

- Deposition:** III 207–13: chief (or king) deposing subjects III 213, 318 (Easter Is.); 212 (Rotuma); 20, 125, 211, 272, 273, 275, 286 (Society); 209–10, 268 (Tonga); *see also* chief revoking office of priest, Society, III 51: council (or councillors) deposing chief (Rotuma), III 212, 225, cf. II 54, 495; (Samoa), II 366, III 10, 207, cf. 208; (Society), II 388, III 199, 210–11: and date question, I 16: deposed chief not losing rank (Tonga), III 210: family head deposed by “sister,” etc. (Samoa), II 106: family heads deposing chief (Samoa), I 46, III 242, cf. Rotuma, III 212, 225: of king, by subjects, III 98–9; (Ellice), III 213; (Fotuna), I 363, 366, III 213; (Marquesas), III 212; (Paumotu), III 132, 212, 302, 360; (Rapa), III 213; (Rarotonga), III 211–12, 290, 358, cf. I 274; (Rotuma), I 421, 428; (Tokelau), III 213: land of deposed man taken by king (chief), Society, III 273, 275–6: by the persons electing (Rotuma), III 205, 212; (Samoa), III 182, 207–8, 242; (Tahiti), III 388, III 199, 210–11; (Tonga), III 209–10, 268: relation given land of deposed chief, III 365; ? 318 (Easter Is.); 272, 275, 286, cf. 20 (Society): relation siding with victors, dispossessing defeated chief (Samoa), III 367: successor from same family appointed by persons deposing (Easter Is.), III 213, 318; (Funafuti), III 213; (Rarotonga), III 290, 293; (Rotuma), ? III 212; (Samoa), I 46, III 182, 242; (Society), III 272, 275, 286: *tuitonga* unable to depose chiefs, III 208, 209, 266: by victors (Rotuma), III 212: *see also under* Titles, etc., withdrawal, and Banishment
- Descent:** agnates and cognates, terms for, (Samoa) II 96, 152: agnates and cognates, cf. “sister” and “brother” villages (Samoa), II 336–8: patrilineal descent observed *re* inheritance (Samoa), II 96: patrilineal mainly (Hervey), II 139: use of term in book, II 87–8, III 364: *see also* Child belonging to either parent, etc.; and Son living with mother’s people, *under* Son
- (matrilineal): adoption by mother’s clan (Mangaia), II 346: and the date question, I 14–15: families founded by ancestresses (Bukabuka), I 382; (Samoa), I 67–8 (Safotu), II 19, 20 (Samalaulu): and importance of father’s sister (Samoa), II 174–5, cf. 215–16; (Tonga), II 183–5: and importance of sister and her descendants (Samoa), II 101–2, 105, 162, 166–8, 169–71, 172, 184, 185, 215–16: and importance of the *tamaha* (Tonga), II 189–90: and importance of the *taupou*, II 106, cf. 100, 188: inheritance through, if no male heirs (Samoa), II 96: mother-to-daughter descent in chief’s lines (Samoa), II 91–4: and separate ownership of land and trees, III 282–5: traces of, II 87–123; 123 (Bukabuka); 123 (Ellice); 118–20 (Hervey); 120–22 (Marquesas); 122 (Niue); 123 (Polynesian Melanesia); 122 (Rotuma); 88–109 (Samoa); 113–18 (Society); 109–13 (Tonga): and the *tuitonga fefine* (Tonga), II 111–13, 187–8, cf. III 216, 369: *see also* Husband living with wife’s people *under* Husband; *also* the *sa’oauluma* name (Samoa)
- of rank, etc.: chief’s children of different ranks according to ranks of mothers (Tonga), II 109: children inheriting rank of father (Hervey), II 118, 119, III 377: equalizing the differing ranks of spouses (Tahiti), II 114–16: family rank personified in *taupou* (Samoa), II 91: father ranking above mother when equals in birth (Tonga), III 369: rank of children by unequal marriages (Samoa), II 89; (Society), II 113–14; (Uvea), III 382–3: rank depending on relationship to great chiefs (Tonga), II 109: son inheriting rank of higher-born parent, II 90; 113 (Tahiti); 110 (Tonga): superior importance of rank of women, II 89, 90–1, 104 (Samoa); 113, 114, 117–18 (Tahiti); 109–10 (Tonga): *tuitonga fefine* transmitting rank to children (Tonga), II 187: *see also* chief’s son by principal wife succeeding (Samoa), III 166, 215, 367–8; (Tonga), II 110, III 230, 369, 370
- Divination:** by coconut, to discover thief (New Hebrides), III 30–1: by coconut, *re* illness, etc. (Tonga), III 15: by coconut, test of innocence (Samoa), III 5–6, *see also* culprit biting poisonous root, III 12, cf. *Tonga*, III 15: by coconut, *re* war, etc. (Mangaia), II 426; (Samoa, *aitu-fono*), II 473: to discover thief (Society), III 18–19, 34, cf. Rarotonga, III 24, sorcerer burning spirit of thief, *see also* Samoa, II 407: diviner, chief as, III 36 (Mangaia); 34 (Tahiti): diviners, priests (Society), III 18, 34; ? (Tonga), II 409, 410: diviners not priests? III 54; (Society), II 418–19: by kava, test of innocence (Samoa), III 7: by means of victim (Society), II 419: by stars (Society), II 419: *see also* *Alataua*, etc. (Samoa), and Omens
- Divine descent of chiefs:** III 61–72; 72 (Easter Is.); 72 (Ellice); 92 (Fiji); 67–9 (Hervey); 69–70, 85, 129, cf. I 314 (Marquesas); 72 (Ongtong Java); 70–1 (Paumotu); 63–5, 74 (Samoa); 66–7 (Society); 71–2 (Tokelau); 65–6 (Ton-

27-2

- ga); and deification of dead chiefs, III 63; and descent from "totem," II 309: of the "Tangaroans," *see under* "Tangaroans": *see also under names of gods and chiefs*
- Divorce: chiefs discarding wives at will (Samoa), II 157: children going to parent to whom they belonged (Society), II 116: clubbing of lover removing husband's claim *re* discarded wife (Samoa), II 338: *tuitonga* and principal wife separating after birth of heirs (Tonga), II 186–7
- Dog: god immanent in tail of (Samoa), II 22: god incarnate in (Samoa), II 221, 222, 226, 249: *marae* dedicated to (Society), II 270: Maui changing Rii into (Paumotu), II 287
- Dowry (Samoa): of bride, distributed among bridegroom's people, II 156: of bride, fine mats, II 126, 155: of bride, mats contributed by orators, etc. III 247, cf. 345–6: of bride, special mat for "sister's son" of bridegroom's father, II 155–6, 167, 168, 174, cf. 170–1: each spouse bringing, II 155: *see also Oloa*, objects made by men, II 379, *Tonga*, objects made by women, II 379
- Dreams: gods communicating with priests in, (Easter Is.), I 400, 405; (Marquesas), II 431?; (Society), II 419: intercourse established with gods by sleeping on *malae* (Samoa), II 82–3, cf. orator "sleeping" on *malae* at *fono*, II 460, III 46: sorcerers interpreting, (Paumotu) II 437: *see also* Tonga, II 413, fainting an advance symptom of inspiration
- Drum: emblem of chieftainship? (Rarotonga), I 265: girl sent to sea in (Huahine), I 215: sent to Ra'iatean *marae* of Oro by Rarotongans, I 236
- "Drum of peace" (Mangaia), I 252, 253, 256, 257, II 348, III 44, 67, 288
- Dual people: I 5, 6, 7, 8, 302–3: connection with the Proto-Samoans? I 8–9, 9–10
- Dying god: (Easter Is.), winner of annual egg-race as secular king, I 394–5, 404, 405–7 (cf. 395–6, 399–400), III 378, 379; *see also* egg-race held on "death" of king, I 394, 405: (Fiji), conch blown on annual departure of god, and on death of sacred king, I 346: (Marquesas), *areoi* feasts, I 302: (Rarotonga), adult son wrestling with father for land, III 201, 221 n. 2, 378–9: (Rotuma), "annual" abdication and inauguration of *sou*, III 335–9, 378, cf. "annual" election of *fakpure*, II 495: (Samoa), annual pigeon-catching feast? II 237–8, *see also* fighting between neighbours permissible at annual feast, II 333: (Society), annual stripping and re-decoration of god? III 81–2: *see also* Ongtong Java, III 385–6, annual election of high-priest
- Ear-piercing (Austral Islands), I 383
- Easter Island: and Anua Motua, I 327, 331: clans, and areas on map, I 384, 385, 386, 387–8: clans, descent from Hotumatua and his sons, I 390, 391, 401, 408–9, II 55: clans, fighting within clan, I 386: clans, names, etc. I 387: clans, sub-groups and areas, I 393, II 56–8: clans, ten clans in own areas, I 386, 387–9, 392–3, 401, 408–9, cf. II 55, III 318–19: clans, two main groups, I 386, 392, 393, II 55, *see also* I 399 n. 4, 407–8, 409: conquering and conquered parties, I 386, cf. I 409, 425: the hill people, I 393: Hotumatua, arrival, etc. I 390, 401, cf. 402: Hotumatua, and connection with Rapa, I 389–90, cf. 384: Hotumatua, the first king, I 388, 390, 391, 392, 401: land divided among Hotumatua's sons, I 388–9, 390, 391, 401, 408–9, II 55, III 318–19, 383: and Melanesia, I 301, 401: the Miru clan, area, etc. I 387: Miru clan, related sub-groups, II 56–8: Miru clan, supernatural powers, I 396, 402–3: Miru head chief the sacred king? *see under* sacred king *below*: native name Rapanui, I 384, cf. 389–90: native name Te Pito te Henua, I 384, 390: sea-bird's egg race, I 385–6, 394–5, 395–6, 399–400, 404–7, II 296: stone houses at Orongo, I 385–6, 395, 407, 408
- — sacred king: abdicating on son's marriage, III 206: abdicating when old, I 397, III 378, 383: not acting as magistrate, I 397, 403, cf. 394: and canoe-makers, I 398: and councils, III 135–6: deposing and appointing chiefs, III 213: divinity of, I 395, 401, 403, III 88: and the egg-race, I 395, 398 *and* n. 5, 402, 405: the first to eat in new house, I 398: first-fruits, etc. brought to, I 394, 395, 398, 401, 402, III 362: governing with the chiefs, I 395: head-chief of the Miru group?, I 396, 402, 403–4, II 364, III 384: labour due to, III 362: lists of kings, and Miru chiefs, I 403–4: lists referred to, I 391, 392, *see also* list of queens, I 391–2: lists not showing divine descent, III 72: living at Anakena, I 397, 402: marrying within own clan, I 396–7, 404: Ngaara, I 397–9, 402–3: Ngaara the last great king, I 397: office continuous, I 395, 402, 404: office hereditary, I 394, 396, 401, 402, 403, 404, III 136, 383–4, 391: power, decline of, I 394, 403, III 136: power despotic, I 395, 403, III 135–6: power over life and property, I 395, 401–2: as priest, I 395, 398, cf. 403: sentencing chiefs to death, III 213: supernatural

INDEX

421

- powers, I 399, 403, II 296, III 45, 341: supremacy acknowledged throughout island, I 395, 397, 402, 403, II 364: tablet and tradition authority, I 395, 397–8, 403: taboos connected with, I 397, 402: tattooed, I 397: tattooing inspected by, I 398: twins given royal name by, I 398: and war, I 397, 402, 403 — secular king: acting as administrator, I 394: office lasting a year, I 394, 395, 402, 405, cf. 396, 400: pillaging the land, I 394, III 362–3: power military, I 395, 405: a tyrant, I 394, III 362–3: the winner of the annual egg-race? I 394–5, 404, 405–7, cf. 395–6, 399–400, 405
- Eating: ceremony enabling king's son to eat with father (Tonga), II 254: eating apart (divine chiefs), Samoa, III 73: eating apart (firstborn), Mangaia, III 200: eating with father's sister (m.s.), Tikopia, II 211: eating food of chief, etc. *see under* Food of sacred persons, etc.: not eating in presence of children of father's sister (m.s.), Tonga, II 192: not eating in presence of father's sister (m.s.), Tonga, II 183, 184, 208: not eating in presence of superior (Tonga), III 76: eating together (relations), II 394 n. 2; (Niue), II 52–3, 401: king and priest the first to eat in new house (Easter Is.), I 398: *mahoo* under same taboos as women *re*, (Society) II 393: taboo to feed self, after touching food, etc. of chief (Tonga), III 76–7: taboo person not feeding self, III 89; (Tonga), II 195–6; *see also* great chiefs, etc. fed, ? (Marquesas), III 86–7; (Society), III 82–3: taboo to see sacred king and son eating (Easter Is.), I 397: women not eating with men (Society), II 393
- Eels: aiding Ationgie's sons against Tongans (Samoa), I 72, II 251: burial of dead eel (incarnation), Samoa, II 225: coconut deriving from head of, *see under* Coconut trees: eel-fishing, food-offerings to dead woman before (Paumotu), II 284–5: as gods, not eaten, II 295 (Manihiki); 284 (Paumotu); 298 (Tikopia); 293–4 (Tokelau); *see also* Samoa, II 244, incarnation eaten by king?, II 248, mock human sacrifice on eating incarnation: as gods, human ancestors in origin (Tikopia), II 299; *see also* Tahiti, II 268, 270, 322, ancestor eel of Mataiea people: gods incarnate in, II 272 (Mangaia); 281 (Marquesas); 219, 220, 221, 224, 228, 231, 233 (Samoa); 298, 300, 301 (Tikopia); 258 (Tonga): incarnation appearing before death of worshipper (Samoa), II 251: incarnations worshipped, etc. II 224, 225 (Samoa); 268, 270, 322 (Tahiti); 300, cf. 301 (Tikopia): part due to king, etc. (Samoa), II 243, 311: raising sky (Ellice), II 232: sacred eels of N.W. and S.E. groups (Marquesas), I 306, 309, II 281: sacred, not killed, II 253 (Tonga); 295 (Tongareva): sex-patrons of women? (Paumotu), II 285–6: sight of god-eel causing death (Rotuma), II 290: spirits returning in form of, (Tonga) II 253, 306: taboo to women (Hervey), II 274: Tahiti regarded as eel, I 211, 220, 235, 236, II 267: Tangaroan gods associated with lizards, snakes and, I 220; (Hervey), II 273–5; (New Hebrides), II 303; (Samoa), I 104, II 231–5; (Society), I 220, II 267; (Tonga), II 253: as village-mark in house, Samoa, II 318, 319: violating women, *see under* Pili
- Eight: division of areas into (Society), I 181–2, 209, 212, 214–15, II 41, 138, cf. Rarotonga, I 272: division of areas into, connection with cuttlefish? I 183–4, II 138, 265
- Eimeo: divisions and districts, I 209–10: eight districts, I 182, 209: *marae* in, sending victims to Ra'iatea, I 212: and the Pomare, I 201, 208–9, 210, III 163, 211: and Tahiti, leaving Ra'iatea in eel-form, I 211, II 267: and the Teva chiefs, I 210, II 69–70, cf. I 193: and tribute due to Tahitian chiefs, I 197 and n. 10: war in, I 197–8, 199
- Election and appointment: appointment of chiefs by king, III 213, 318 (Easter Is.); 20, 211, 272, 273, 275 (Society); 187, cf. 190, 194–5, 209–10, 268 (Tonga); 206 (Uvea): appointment of chiefs by victor (Rotuma), III 212: appointment of priests by chiefs (Ongtong Java), III 385–6; (Society), III 50–1, 59–60; (Tokelau), II 439, III 52: appointment of sub-chief by chief (Society), III 273: appointment of sub-chief not in power of chief (Tonga), III 189, 194–5, 266, 269: chief elected by family heads (Rotuma), III 205, 225: chiefs elected by other chiefs and *mataiapo* (Rarotonga), III 202–3: chiefs elected by priests? (Mangaia), III 202, cf. 201, 219: chiefs elected by subjects, ? (Marquesas), III 203; (Niue), I 355, II 493; (Tonga), III 119, cf. 188, 189, 194–5: chiefs elected by subjects, with king's approval (Tonga), III 268, *see also* Rotuma, III 205, person elected family-head must be recognized by chief: election of chiefs (Society), III 377, 392: election of chiefs and abdication custom (Society), III 371–3, cf. III 199: election to names and titles, III 170–206; 206 (Easter Is.); 206 (Ellice); 205 (Fotuna); 200–3 (Hervey); 203 (Marquesas); 204 (Niue); 203–4 (Paumotu); 204–5 (Rotuma); 170–86 (Samoa);

- 195–200 (Society); 206 (Tokelau); 186–95 (Tonga); 205–6 (Uvea): king elected by chiefs (Niue), I 355, II 493; (Tonga), I 148, III 186, 187, 188, cf. 189–90: king elected by council (Fotuna), I 363, cf. 366–7, II 495, III 205; (Rotuma), II 495; (Tahiti, *hiva*), I 187, II 42, 387–8, III 17, 198, 199, 210–11; (Tonga, *kau matua*), III 186, 188, 190, 191, 192, cf. I 418: king elected by “family” (Ellice), ? I 378, III 206; (Tonga, *tuikanokubolu*), III 188–9, 191, 193–4; cf. Samoa, II 15–17, 21–2, III 171–5, electoral families related to king: king elected by subjects (Ellice), I 379, III 206, cf. 383; (Paumotu), ? III 204, 302; (Tokelau), III 206: sacred king elected by each district in turn (Rotuma), I 358–9, 430, III 381, 494, cf. Fiji, I 430: sacred king elected by secular king and council? (Uvea), III 205–6: sacred king not elected? (Tonga), III 119, 186: same persons electing and deposing (Rotuma), III 205, 212; (Samoa), III 182, 207–8, 242; (Tahiti), II 388, III 199, 210–11; (Tonga), III 209–10, 268: secular king elected (Mangaia), I 252, III 202, 377; (Tonga), I 148, III 186–7, 188–94, cf. I 161, 418; *see also* Easter Is. secular king, winner of annual race: “turimen” elected by family heads (Manihiki), III 29: unfit candidates rejected (Samoa), III 367; (Tonga), I 148, III 188; cf. Mangaia, III 201, *and* Mangareva, III 380: *see also* Succession, Titles, etc. *and* Wills
- Elizabeth Is. and Anua Motua, I 327
- Ellice group: I 377–8: forms of government varying in different islands, I 378–80: *see also* Funafuti
- Endogamy: in the Marquesas? II 140, 202: Miru chief obliged to marry within own clan (Easter Is.), I 396–7, 404: in Polynesian parts of Melanesia? II 146: in Tikopia? II 146
- Evil eye: III 88–9: king’s glance causing fruits, etc. to perish (Samoa), III 74, 75, 321: king’s glance causing illness (Rarotonga), III 84: king’s glance killing men (Samoa), III 75: kings not looked at, III 84 (Rarotonga); 74 (Samoa); 88 (Uvea); cf. Society, III 80–1
- Exogamy, and marriage restrictions: II 124–46; 144–5 (Easter Is.); 134 *n.* I (Fiji); 138–40 (Hervey); 140–2 (Marquesas); 142–3 (Niue); 143–4 (Rotuma); 128–35 (Samoa); 137–8 (Society); 135–6 (Tonga): brides selected from distant villages (Samoa), II 157–8, 159, cf. 135: children informed as to lawful spouses (Hervey), II 139: girl not observing restrictions losing dowry (Samoa), II 126: and incest laws (Samoa), II 130–4: local exogamy system probable (Samoa), II 130–5, cf. 89: man not observing restrictions excommunicated (Samoa), II 125–6: marriage allowable between cross-cousins living in different groups (Samoa), II 127, 130, 132–5: marriage within group recognizing same family head unsafe (Samoa), II 126, cf. 124: marriage within the *hoang* taboo (Rotuma), II 143; *see also* widower ejected from wife’s family’s home at funeral, II 122: marriage within tribe offensive to gods (Hervey), II 139: men taking wives from other clans (Hervey), II 139, 346: offspring of improper marriages dying, etc. (Samoa), II 124, 126: rape within “family”? (Samoa), III 2: relations not marrying, II 144 (Easter Is.); 144 (Fotuna); 140 (Marquesas); 146 (Penrhyn); 124, 125–6 (Samoa); 137 (Society); 144 (Uvea); *see also* Rarotonga, II 140, relations marrying: restrictions applying to outsiders living with family group (Samoa), II 126, 127, 131–2: victorious and vanquished sections of same tribe allowed to marry (Hervey), II 139–40: *see also* Child belonging to either parent, etc.; *and* Husband living in wife’s family, *under* Husband
- Exorcising “spirit” from turtle (Tongareva), II 294–5
- Faaa (Tefana i Ahurai): chiefs of, I 197, 199, 200: independent of Papara chief, I 178, 187, 188, 189, 191
- Fakahina Is., Paumotu, II 49
- Fakafo (Tokelau): four families, I 373: government, I 373, 374: natives descended from brothers (first men), I 373 — kings: descended from the first men, I 373, III 71–2: islets owned by, III 314: king as high priest, etc. I 374, III 38, 88: kinship with Atafu kings, I 373–4, III 71–2: list, I 373: oldest male of the four families made king, I 373, 376, III 382, 395
- Faleupolu*, *see under* Councillors, Samoa
- Families: chiefs and councillors as heads of families, *see under* Chiefs, *and* Councillors: consanguine? (Tonga), II 252: consanguine families with titled heads composing village (Samoa), I 41, cf. 45, *see also* Fiji, I 343–4, *and* Rotuma, I 357: consanguine family composing household, II 54–5? (Ellice); 48 (Marquesas); 44 (Rarotonga): family gods, *see under* Gods: family name, *see under* Titles, etc.: head of family as priest, *see under* Priests: heads of families being deposed, or deposing chief, *see under* Deposition, *and* Titles, etc., withdrawal of: heads of families being elected, or electing chief, *see*

INDEX

423

- under* Election, and Titles, etc.: heads of families governing, etc. *see under* Administration of Justice, and Government, etc.
- Fanonga (Le Fanonga), Samoa: ally of Losi, I 99, 100–1: disinherited son of Tangaroa-a-Ui, I 51, 100: as god of fishing, II 246: owl incarnation worshipped, etc. II 223, 246, cf. Sangata owl, II 220: and Pava, fighting Tangaroa, I 102, 122, 125: and Pava, fleeing from Tangaroa, I 101, 102: son of Pava, I 101: a war god, II 223, 246
- Fasting, before sacrifice, etc. of turtle (Paumotu), II 286
- Fata and Tuna (sons of Ationgie): aided by sister's son, II 25: councillors of elder brother, I 74, III 145: the dance and song incident, I 71–2: driving out the Tongans, I 60, 65–6, 71–2, 73, 111, 143, II 25, III 145: Fata founding *alataua* council in Safata, III 47, cf. I 74: moving stone with aid of eels, etc. I 72, II 251: passing Malietoa title to elder brother, I 72, 73, III 145: stealing anchor pole of *tuitonga*, I 71, 72: and the wives of *tuitonga*, I 72–3
- Father: adoptive, term, II 207 (Fotuna); 201 (Marquesas); 204 (Paumotu): and child, term (Fotuna), II 207: not important (Marquesas), II 120: term for, II 212 (Duff Is.); 207 (Fotuna); 201 *and n.* 8 (Marquesas); 205 (Niue); 204 (Paumotu); 149 (Samoa); 199 (Society); 209 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga): term used classificatorily, II 149 (Samoa); 209 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga)
- Father-in-law: called “father,” II 209 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga): same term for mother-in-law and, II 206 (Niue), cf. Society, II 200: term for, II 204 (Paumotu); 200 (Society)
- Father's brother: called “father,” II 212 (Duff Is.); 207 (Fotuna); ? 200 (Hervey); 213 (New Hebrides); ? 207 (Rotuma); 149 (Samoa); 209 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga): as guardian of orphans (Samoa), II 149, cf. Hervey, II 201
- brother's children, called “brothers” and “sisters” (Tonga), II 179
- daughter (m.s.), not married (Samoa), II 126
- son's daughter (m.s.), not married (Samoa), II 126
- wife, called “mother,” II 209 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga)
- sister: called “aunt” (New Hebrides), II 213: called “mother” (Duff Is.), II 212: term for, II 210 (Tikopia); 180 (Tonga): term used classificatorily, II 163–4 (Banks); 180 (Tonga)
- (m.s.): not acting in ceremonies connected with nephew (Tonga), II 183: adopting nephew, II 164 (Santa Cruz), *see also* Tonga (*fanounga*), II 180, 183: avoidance of, II 163 (Banks); 163 (Pentecost); 163, 183 (Tonga): avoidance of, and potential wife theory (Tonga), II 183–4: at ceremonies connected with brother's firstborn child (Banks), II 164: at ceremony initiating nephew (Banks), II 164: at feast held on nephew's learning genealogies (Marquesas), II 203–4: at funeral of nephew? (*tuitonga fefine*), Tonga, II 196, 197–8: importance of, and continuing rights of sister, II 147–8; 174–5, 215–16 (Samoa); 183–5 (Tonga): importance of, and increasing power of father, II 164–5: importance not solely associated with patrilineal descent, II 163: marriage rights, and bride's loin mat (Samoa), II 161, 171, 173–4: marriage with, allowable (Torres), II 164: marriage with, taboo (Tikopia), II 146, cf. Samoa, II 125, 128–9: navel string, etc. of “brother's” child received by, (Banks), II 163–4: nephew cursing (Tingilau), Samoa, II 230, cf. 245: nephew eating with, (Tikopia) II 211: nephew not eating in presence of, (Tonga), II 183, 184, 208: nephew entering house of, (Tikopia) II 211: nephew speaking to, II 211 (Tikopia); 183 (Tonga): and nephew's wife, etc. II 163 (Banks); 163 (Pentecost); 164 (Santa Cruz); 211 (Tikopia); 163, 183, 184 (Tonga); 164 (Torres); 164 (Vanikolo): peace kept between brother's sons by, (Samoa) I 63, 67, II 103, 104, 333, cf. 336–8: peace and war decided by, (Samoa) II 104: property rights, etc. of nephew and, II 163 (Banks); 211 (Tikopia); 163, 183 (Tonga); 164 (Vanikolo): regarded as “sister”? (Samoa), II 125, cf. 103: respect for, connected with father's avoidance, II 165, 174–5: respected and obeyed by nephew, II 163 (Banks, Pentecost); 163, 183 (Tonga); 163 (Vanikolo): sentencing delinquents? (Samoa), II 104–5: as successor to title (*tamaha*), etc. II 112–13, III 371: termed *tamaha*, etc. (also her children), Tonga, II 192–3, 196, 197–8 (tree, 191); cf. Samoa, II 152: of *tuitonga*, called *tuitonga fefine*? (Tineh), II 193–4: of *tuitonga*, chiefs kissing Tineh's feet, II 193, cf. 187: of *tuitonga*, of higher rank than nephew, II 192 (tree, 191): of *tuitonga*, rank and importance of Tineh, II 193, 194: *see also* chief's aunt invoking family god (Tonga), II 256, III 50
- (w.s.): adopting niece (Samoa), II 161, cf. 108: arranging marriage of niece (Tonga), II 183, 184: at menstruation feast of niece (Tonga), II 183:

- taking niece as concubine for her husband (Samoa), II 161, 171: taking property of niece (Tonga), II 183, 184
- sister's children: "brothers" and "sisters" (Tonga), II 179: consulted by family head *re* land (Samoa), II 104, III 243: influence over brother's sons' descendants (Samoa), II 103-4: and their mother, called *tamaha* (Tonga), II 192-3 (tree, 191), cf. 180-1
- daughter (m.s.): and her mother, etc. called *tamaha* (Tonga), II 192-3 (tree, 191): a "sister," not married (Samoa), II 126: *tuitonga* not eating in presence of, II 192 (tree, 191): *tuitonga* kissing feet of, II 192
- husband: called "father" (Tonga), II 178: called "grandparent" (Duff Is.), II 213
- son (m.s.): of bridegroom, receiving special mat (Samoa), II 155-6, 167, 168, 174, cf. 170-1: bride's loin apron given to (Samoa), II 161, 171, 173-4: claims superior to those of sister's son (Samoa), II 156, 168: Latulibulu regarded as superior by *tuitonga*, II 192 (tree, 191): Latulibulu, *tuitonga* not eating in presence of, II 192 (tree, 191): and his mother, etc. called *tamaha* (Tonga), II 192-3 (tree, 191); cf. Samoa, II 152: succeeding, (Samoa) II 90?, III 367: Viachi, sanctity, etc. (Tonga), II 195, 196 (tree, 191): Viachi's feet kissed by *tuitonga*, II 196: Viachi's son respected by son of *tuitonga*, II 196, 197: *see also* Sister's son
- Fatuhiva, Marquesas: districts and groups, I 316: had king, I 316, 323
- Fatuhuku Is. (Marquesas), supported by shark, I 306-8, II 280
- Feasts: appointed by "king" (Easter Is.), I 402; (Fotuna), I 363; (Mangareva), III 132; (Samoa), III 324: appointed by priest (Samoa), II 407, III 40, cf. Society, II 420, 421: led by king as priest (Easter Is.), I 395; *see also* III 400, and *tuitonga*, I 164: names of chiefs called in order of precedence at, (Mangaia), I 262-3: originating at Atia-tevaringa-nui *marae*, I 21: presided over by king (Uvea), I 371: suzerain chief summoning district chiefs? (Marquesas), I 317, 320, 322
- (Easter Is.), sea-birds' egg race: bird, the sooty tern, II 296: cannibal feasts before, I 405-6: competitors employing representatives, I 400, 405: competitors members of ascendant clan, I 399-400: and "dying god," I 405-7, III 378, 379, *see also* I 394, 405, race held on death of king: and election of secular king, I 394-5, 404, 405-7, cf. 395-6, 399-400: fire lit on winner's return, I 407: food offerings to winner, I 396, 400: held in September, I 394: in honour of Meke-meke, I 396: human sacrifice in connection with, I 395, 405-6: the Orongo houses connected with, I 385-6, 395, 407, 408: priest foretelling result, I 400, 405: *rongo-rongo* men chanting at Orongo, I 398, 406: sacred king not appearing at Orongo, I 398 and *n.* 5, cf. 395: sacred king not competing, I 395, 402, 405: winner going to special district, I 407-8: winner observing five months' taboo, I 400, 405, cf. 408: *see also* periodical script-tablet feasts, I 397-8
- (Marquesas), on death and re-birth of Maui, I 302
- (Rarotonga), first-fruits, II 77
- (Ongtong Java), election of high priest at annual feast, III 385-6
- (Rotuma), "annual" inauguration and abdication of *sou*, III 335-9
- (Samoa): annual feast for removal of sickness, II 250: fighting between neighbours permissible at annual feast, II 333
- pigeon-catching: annual feast, II 235, 254: birds caught with nets, II 235-6, 254, cf. Niue, II 292, and Tonga, II 254: chiefs alone engaging in, II 235, 236, cf. Niue, II 292: chiefs engaged in, sacred and equal, II 236-7: debauchery connected with, II 236: decoy birds used, II 235-6, 254, cf. Niue, II 292: food offering to winner, II 237: a "kingship" competition? II 237-8: names of chiefs not called out at food distributions, II 237: period, II 235: *see also* Pigeons
- (Society): annual stripping and re-decoration of gods (Huahine), III 81-2, cf. I 182: king giving cloth to chiefs, etc. at (Tahiti), III 356
- (Tonga): of first-fruits, human sacrifice at, III 350: of first-fruits, offered to *tuitonga*, I 162-3, III 350-3: *see also* pigeon-catching, II 254
- Feather head-dress (Easter Is.): as clan insignia? II 327-8: "professor" reading badly deprived of, I 398: worn by sacred king, etc. at tablet ceremony, I 397
- Feathers (red): Farepua *marae*, decorated with, (Tahiti) I 174, 229: feathers representing names on weapons (Niue), II 327: in images, annual renewal (Huahine), I 182, cf. III 81-2: the *maro ura* (Society), *see that title*: symbol of Oro, given to combatants (Tahiti), II 343: symbols of gods, I 148, II 252 (Tonga); cf. Paumotu, II 284-5: *see also* the *senga* bird (Samoa)
- Fe'e (Samoa): ally of Losi, I 99, 100: brought by Pava to Apia, I 100: connection with Tuamasanga, I 95, 100,

INDEX

425

- cf. cuttlefish god of Apia, II 220-1: and Fiji, II 319-20: god of the dead, I 95, 127, II 221, 231, 233: as god of the dead, succeeded by Si'uleo, I 95 and *n.* 1, II 233: god of lower regions, I 48, 95, 100, 127, II 231, 233: the House of Fe'e, II 474, III 46, 110-11, *see also* II 220: incarnate in cuttlefish, II 231, 319, cf. 220-1: leaving Savai'i to go with Tangaroa, I 94, cf. 95: Malietoa connected with, I 95, 100, 127, III 64: mock human sacrifice to, on eating of cuttlefish, II 247: priest of, II 419 *n.* 2: progenitor of rocks and islands, I 48: succeeding Mau'i, I 95, 126: Tangaroa creating, I 48, 94, 95, 127: pre-Tangaroan god, I 94-5, 99, 100, 126, 127, II 233: as war-god, II 320, 419 *n.* 2
- Fidelity: wives of kings taboo, III 73-4 (Samoa); ? 76 (Tonga): wives' bodies painted to reveal infidelities (Samoa—Tonga), I 72-3
- Fiji: chief village capital of whole area, I 344: clan grouping in villages and districts, I 343-4, II 50-1: dependencies of social group, I 344-5: as early settling-place, etc. I 2, 4, 27, 29, 31, 33-4, 35-6: Fijian titles in Polynesian islands, I 115, II 359, 363, III 162: and Fotuna, I 367-8: and late migrations, I 12, 114-15: and Manu'a, I 99, 102-4, 107, 115, 117, 119-21, 122, 128-9, III 346: Manu'a and, fished up by Hikuleo (Tonga), I 105, 124, 126: Manu'a, Savai'i, Tonga and, connected in myths, I 117, 128-9: and Niue (Tafiti group), I 347-8: Polynesian element in, I 345: Samoan connection with, *see also* Tuifiti: Samoan wives of chiefs of, I 142: Savai'i gods associated with, I 116-17: and the Savai'i Tongan-Fijians, I 62-8, 108, 125, cf. 109: stone from Tahiti *marae* connected with? I 230, 231: Tangaroa not among gods of, I 112-15: and Tangaroa (Samoa), I 89-90, 120-1, 138: and "Tangaroan" gods (Samoa), I 115-17: "Tangaroans" coming from, I 69, 88, 90-1, 109, 110, 111: tattooing introduced from, (Samoa) I 116: and Tonga, I 103, 105-6, 124, 126, 129, 160
- dual kingship: in Bau, I 345-6: process of scission in each stage of evolution, I 346, 420: no separation of offices in Melanesian Fiji, I 346
- sacred king of Bau: beginning to lose respect, I 346: not engaging in war, I 346, 420: member of special family, I 346, 420: Roko-Tui-Bau, I 345-6: upholding religion, cannibalism, etc. I 345-6, 420
- secular king of Bau: administrator, I 346, 420 commander in war, I 346, 420: member of special family, I 346, 420: the *Vunivalu*, I 346
- Tonga and Samoa, native group name for, I 170
- Finau chiefs and suzerainty of *tuikanokubolu*, (Tonga) I 154, 168
- Ulukalala I (Tonga): chief of Vavau, I 153: commander-in-chief, and head of police, I 150, 153, 154: date of death, I 154, 155: more powerful than *tuikanokubolu*, I 154: power over lives of slaves, III 118: relationship to Maelialuaki, Tubu, etc. I 152, 169: relative powers of *tuitonga* and, I 153-4, III 117: son of Tubu-lahi? I 145, 152, 169, 433: son of *tuikanokubolu*, I 150, 154, 169: as *tuikanokubolu*, I 145, 433
- II: assassination of Tukuaho and rise to power, I 158-62, 165-6, 169, III 208-9: avoiding superior chiefs, etc. II 193, 195: brother and successor of F. U. I, I 155, 169: brother of Tubu Nuha, I 158, 169, III 208: chief of Haapai, I 158, 165, 169: chief of Haapai and Vavau, I 150-1, 159, 160, 166, II 195, III 187, 195, 208-9: commander-in-chief, etc.? I 156, 158: councils summoned by, III 325: death, I 162: deposing and appointing chiefs, III 209-10: female mourners at funeral of, II 195-6: as food controller, III 325: food tribute to, III 348, 349: illness of daughter of, III 49-50: inspired by "clan" god, II 411 and *n.* 3, 412, III 34-5, cf. 41: invoking god, II 412, III 42: land "given" to Mariner by, III 267, 270: never elected *tuikanokubolu*, I 161, 162, II 195, III 195: power, III 118: prisoners set adrift by, III 15-16: related to Kanokubolu family, I 161, 169, III 35: rival of Tukuaho, I 155: son of *tuikanokubolu* Maelialuaki? I 161, 169: Tongatabu not under control of, I 160, 161, 162: treatment of *tuitonga*, I 161-2, 166, III 351, cf. II 195: *tuitonga* marrying daughter of, I 161, II 185
- Moengangono: in assembly house, II 476-7: depriving *tuitonga* of *inaji* offerings, I 162-3, 166, III 351-2: and food supply, III 325-6: inauguration of, III 187, 191, 192 *n.* 1, 193: son and successor of F. U. II, I 162: Tongatabu not under control of, III 187: not *tuikanokubolu*, I 162, III 195
- Fines: acceptance of (Samoa), III 13, cf. acceptance of atonement, III 4: of food (Rotuma), III 27: king benefiting by, III 26 (Niue); 28 (Tokelau): king and council taking, (Manihiki) III 30: of work, III 27 (Rotuma); 28 (Tokelau)
- Fire: "fire-maker" sharing chief's wife (Marquesas), II 398 and *n.* 2: kept up at night by chief's servant, II 375-6 (Samoa); 384 (Tonga): lights taboo (Rotuma), II 290: of *mahoo*, not taboo to women (Society), II 393: Maui the

- discoverer of, I 302; (Mangaia), II 206: of men, taboo to *mahoo* (Society), II 393: for sacred shark (Samoa), II 229: at sea-birds' egg feast (Easter Is.), I 407
- Firstborn: the chief and priest of clan (Mangaia), III 35-6, 200: "elder brother," etc. "younger brother," etc., terms for, *see under* Brother: "eldest" sister specially respected by brother (Tonga), II 110, cf. Samoa, II 181 *n.* 12, and Tonga, II 183: eldest son and daughter ranking above rest (Tonga), III 369-70: father's sister at rites connected with birth of, (Banks Is.) II 164: first-fruits of fishing offered to firstborn children (Mangaia), III 200: first-fruits of fishing offered to gods by firstborn children (Mangaia), III 200: first-fruits offered by younger brothers to, (Samoa) II 107, 376, III 346-7: first-fruits offered to "favourite" son (Society), III 357: god entering (Mangaia), III 200, 201, 219, 373, cf. god entering head of family, II 101-2: god entering youngest son sometimes (Mangaia), III 201, 202, 219, 373, 378, cf. 379: godlike nature of? (Marquesas), III 203, cf. 85: land inherited by firstborn son or daughter, III 232 (Marquesas); 382 (Tokelau): "landowner" the title applied to, (Mangaia) III 200, 201, 232: largest share of land going to, (Mangaia) III 200, cf. 201, 232, 377: sanctity of firstborn child (Mangaia), III 200-1: sanctity and titles of abdicating father passing to, (Marquesas) III 203, 221-2; (Society), I 203 and *n.* 4, III 220-1, 222-3, 373 *n.* 2, cf. Hao Is. III 222: succeeding, and providing for brothers, etc. (Tonga), III 230: succeeding, *see also* succession by oldest male, etc. *under* Old people: not succeeding, rights of younger brothers equal (Society), I 186-7, III 198, 374-5: succession by eldest son not necessary, III 365-8 (Samoa); 371, 373 (Society); 370 (Tonga): succession by firstborn daughter, disqualification on marriage? (Society), I 186-7, III 198, 374-5: succession by firstborn son, III 386; (Easter Is.), I 388, III 383; (Mangaia), III 35-6, 200-1, 219, 377-8; (Marquesas), III 203, 380; (Paumotu), ? III 204; (Society), III 371-3, 374; (Tikopia), III 384; (Tonga), III 230, 369, 369-70: succession by firstborn son or daughter (Marquesas), III 203, 232, 380, 390; (Society), I 186-7, III 371, 374, 376, 389; (Tokelau), III 382: succession by younger son (Mangaia), II 426, III 201, 219, 378, 379 (Samoa), I 52-3, 54-5, 100-1, III 144, 145; (Society), I 186-7, III 198, 374-5, *see also* III 211; (Tonga), III 370: younger brothers as counsellors of, *see* Orators
- the "brothers" of their chiefs, *under* Classes, etc. relationship: younger brothers serving, etc. (Mangaia), III 200; (Marquesas), II 397 and *n.* 1, cf. 121; (Samoa), II 376; (Tahiti), II 384, 385, 386-7, 388; (Tikopia), ? II 404, III 384: "younger sisters," term applied to companions of *taupou* (Samoa), II 151
- First-fruits: due to head of group as landholder, III 360-1 (Niue); 169, 310, 361 (Rotuma): due to head of group as representative of god, etc. III 352-3, 399-400, cf. Niue, III 360-1: due to head of group from tenants (Rotuma), III 309; (Society), ? III 357: first-born receiving, from younger brothers (Samoa), II 107, 376, III 346-7, cf. Tahiti, III 357, first-fruits offered to "favourite" son: first fish caught in new net offered to gods or king (Society), III 357: first three prisoners offered to Oro (Society), II 419: of fishing, offered to chief (Samoa), III 347: of fishing, offered to first-born children and their gods (Mangaia), III 200: of garden, given to head chief (Society), III 357: offered to chiefs, III 361 (Rotuma); 346-7 (Samoa): offered to gods and chiefs (Fotuna), III 361, cf. Society, III 357: offered to sacred king (Easter Is.), I 394, 395, 401, 402, III 362; ? (Rotuma), III 337, cf. 336, 361; (Tonga), I 142, 143, 144, 167, II 192, III 348, 350-3, cf. I 162-3, 419, III 351, 352: offered to superior by *manahune* ? (Society), II 392: of season, offered to head chief (Society), III 357: *see also* Offerings to gods
- Fish: born of woman (Samoa), II 245: clans named after (Taumaco), I 413: as district badge on canoe (Samoa), II 317: fish reserved for king (Paumotu), II 286: gods incarnate in, II 302 (Duff Is.); 294 (Ellice); 43, 271 (Mangaia); 295-6 (Manihiki); 281-2, 283 (Marquesas); 301 (Ongtong Java); 287-8 (Paumotu); 288 (Rotuma); 219, 220, 221, 224, 245, 249 (Samoa); 261?, 262, 270 (Society); 298, 299, 300, 301 (Tikopia); 293-4 (Tokelau); 252 (Tonga); 293 (Uvea): gods incarnate in, human ancestors (Tikopia), II 299: Lufilufi as (Samoa), II 466-7: names of fish, etc. applied to villages (Samoa), II 318-19: sacred, not eaten (Marquesas), II 281-2, 283, 311-12, III 129; (Paumotu), II 287-8?; (Tongareva), II 295?; (Uvea), II 293?: sacred, offered to god before eaten (Marquesas), II 283, 312: sacred, priests (and chiefs?) eating (Marquesas), II 283: sacred, privilege of eating, II 312-15: spirits of dead returning in, *see under the* Dead, spirits returning: tattoo marks imitating marks on,

INDEX

427

- (Mangaia), II 324: Tinirau king of, (Mangaia), II 277: worshipped (Society), II 261, 262: *see also* Bonito, Eels, Sharks and Turtles
- Fishing:** dues of chief *re*, III 360 (Mangareva); 363 (Tikopia); 117 (Tonga): Fanonga as god of (Samoa), II 246: first-fruits of new net offered to god or king (Society), III 357: first-fruits offered to chief (Samoa), III 347: first-fruits offered to first-born children and their gods (Mangaia), III 200: god asked to give good fishing (Ongtong Java), II 301: good catch procured by taking images to sea (Huahine), II 266–7, cf. Rarotonga, II 324: offerings to Ruatamaine before, (Mangaia) I 255: Pili god of net-fishing (Samoa), II 232: priest tying emblem of Mokoiro to canoes before, (Mangaia) I 253–4, II 273, 324, III 329; cf. Rarotonga, II 324: religious ceremonies before, (Ellice), II 439: secondary priests presiding over, (Marquesas), II 431: taboo before feast (Mangareva), III 335: taboo imposed by council on, (Samoa), III 241, 323: taboo on (Tahiti), III 329: taboo on, to maintain stock (Ellice), III 341: taboo season (Marquesas), III 332: *see also under* Eels, Sharks, and Turtles
- rights: clan disputes *re*, (Penrhyn), III 319: channel water family property (Rotuma), III 308, 309, 311: channel water, individual rights *re*, (Rotuma), III 309, 312: channel water village property? (Samoa), III 240, cf. 255: hill people paying tribute for right to cross channel (Rotuma), I 361, III 307–8: large net group property, III 302–3, 304 (Mangareva); 311, cf. 311–12 (Rotuma); 323? (Samoa): large net “let” to other districts (Rotuma), III 311: nets (small), family property (Mangareva), III 302: open sea common (Mangareva), III 303: outer reef common (Rotuma), I 361, III 309, 312: portions of sea owned by groups, III 296, 298 (Marquesas); 279 (Society): private owner observing council’s taboo on fishing (Samoa), III 241, 323: reef waters owned by groups and chiefs (Samoa), III 240–1; cf. Mangareva, III 303, and Society, III 279: reef waters, ownership now little recognized (Rotuma), III 310: “rent” paid to chief for fishing-rights (Society), III 279, 287: rocks in sea owned (Mangareva), III 302
- Flies:** as guardians of burial cave (Mangaia), II 306, 315: not killed, II 289 (Rotuma); 256, 315 (Tonga)
- Flood,** originating because turtle not brought to king (Rakahanga), II 296
- Fly-flap** (Samoa): insignia of orators, I 58, 59, II 460: insignia of priests, I 54, III 48
- Flying-fox:** appearance ominous to worshipper (Tonga), II 259, 261: not called *pe’a* in Tonumaip’e’a area (Samoa), III 94: not eaten (Tikopia), II 298: gods incarnate in, II 220, 221 (Samoa); 298, 300, 301 (Tikopia); 252, 255, 259 (Tonga); *see also* Niue, II 292: gods incarnate in, human ancestors (Tikopia), II 299: killing of, making trees barren (Tikopia) II 299: killing of, penalty (Tonga), II 255: killing of, permissible to certain chiefs (Tonga), II 259, 311: sanctity of, and association with *marae* (Tonga), II 255
- Food:** common, III 313–14 (Fotuna); 295 (Marquesas); 301 (Paumotu); 287, 290 (Rarotonga); 236 (Samoa); 270, 271 (Society); 265–6 (Tonga); 314 (Uvea): common and family ownership of breadfruit pits, III 334 (Mangareva); 331 (Marquesas): devastating offender’s plantations, III 8–10 (Samoa); 19 (Society); cf. Mangaia, III 23: family head providing family with, (Samoa) III 344: family sharing fruit of member’s labour, III 287, 290, 292 (Rarotonga); 236, 237 (Samoa): at *fono*, brought by youths and girls to head of family (Samoa), II 471: at *fono*, supplied by place holding meeting (Easter Is.)? I 397; (Samoa), II 471, cf. method of reducing resistance, Niue, II 493, and Samoa, II 472: for *fono*, obligatory tax (Niue), III 360: holder of family land obliged to support family (Rarotonga), III 290, 292, 307, 330: right to neighbour’s coconuts, III 315, 316, 318 (Ellice); 319 (Tikopia): stealing from relation not wrong (Samoa), III 236: theft of, punished by death, III 30 (Bukabuka); 23 (Hervey); 28 (Tokelau): theft of, thief’s district devastated (Hervey), III 23
- of chiefs, etc.: best food reserved for gods, chiefs and priests (Marquesas), II 283, 312, III 129, 359: best food (specific fish, etc.) reserved for chiefs, II 277–8, 311 (Hervey); 286, 312 (Paumotu); 296, 312 (Rakahanga); 289, 312 (Rotuma); 229, 243, 311 (Samoa); 269, 311 (Society); cf. Tonga, II 255, 311; *see also under* Eels, Sharks and Turtles: heads of animals offered by brother to sister (Samoa), II 103: large fish offered to chiefs (Mangaia), I 262: sacred fish, etc. eaten by chiefs, II 312–15, *see also under* Eels, Sharks, and Turtles: strange animals due to chief (Rotuma), III 361
- distribution at feasts, etc.: by chief (Aitutaki), I 283–4, 291, III 36, 329; (Mangareva), III 334; (Society), II 393; (Tokelau), III 340: by family head (Samoa), II 471: king tabooing food

- half-way through feast (Fotuna), III 340: by *matabule* (Tonga), II 381, III 351: by *mua* (Tonga), II 381: names of chiefs called out at feasts (Mangaia), II 263: names of chiefs not called out at pigeon-catching feast (Samoa), II 237: by orators (Samoa), II 368, 467: by sister's daughter, at Mumui's funeral (Tonga), II 193-4 (tree, 191), cf. 195-6: by special officials (Marquesas), III 331; (Samoa), II 448
- for guests: chief responsible for, (Samoa), III 344, 345: each family in village contributing (Samoa), II 447: pigs killed for guests (Samoa), III 323, 324, 345: provisioning arrangements made by leading orator (Samoa), II 447: requisitioned from *ra'atira* by chief (Society), III 353-4: subjects withholding supplies punished (Samoa), II 104-5, III 345: *see also* food shared with strangers, III 301 (Paumotu); 266 (Tonga); 314 (Uvea)
- offerings, tribute, etc.: chief giving subjects, etc. food (Easter Is.), III 318; (Ellice), III 362; (Marquesas), ? II 326, III 130; (Rotuma), ? III 361; (Society), III 355-6, 356-7, cf. 354; (Tikopia), III 363; (Tonga), III 348, 350, cf. 347: chief having possession of food (Marquesas), I 316, 318; (Rarotonga), I 268, cf. III 358: chief's right to entertainment by subjects (Society), III 354: chief's right to take subjects' fowls, etc. III 362-3 (Easter Is.); 359, cf. 359-60 (Marquesas); 353-4, 355, 356 (Society); 349 (Tonga): compensation given by chief for, (Samoa), II 370, III 344, 345; (Tikopia), II 404, III 363; *see also* Marquesas, III 359: contingent on activity of chief (Samoa), III 344: offering to winner of egg-race (Easter Is.), I 396, 400: offering to winner at pigeon-catching feast (Samoa), II 237: offerings re-distributed among family by sub-head (Samoa), III 344: offerings re-distributed by group head to sub-heads (Samoa), III 344-5, cf. Tonga, III 351: offerings re-distributed among people by chief, III 343; 360 (Mangareva); 344 (Samoa); 351-2 (Tonga); cf. Mangaia, I 362, and Rotuma (*sou*), ? III 336: penalty for withholding supplies from chief (Mangareva), III 360; (Samoa), II 104-5; (Society), III 19, 20, 211, 272, 354, 355: periodical offerings to chiefs (Easter Is.), I 398; (Mangareva), ? III 360; (Marquesas), ? III 358, 359; (Rotuma), III 361; (Society), III 355; (Tonga), III 348; *see also under* First-fruits: the provisioning of chiefs by councillors, family heads (Samoa), II 370, III 344, 345; (Tikopia), II 404, III 363; (Tonga), II 383, III 349: the provisioning of chiefs (daily, etc.), III 362 (Easter Is.); 358 (Mangaia); 360 (Mangareva); 360 (Niue); 361 (Rotuma); 345 (Samoa); 231, 353, 356 (Society); 363 (Tikopia); 347, 349 (Tonga); 362 (Uvea): provisioning of *matabule* by lower classes (Tonga), II 383, III 349: quantity of offerings determined by king (Fotuna), I 363: tribute due to chief, III 320-1, 399-400; 360 (Niue); 363 (Tikopia): tribute due to chief as landholder, etc. III 360 (Mangareva); 295, 301, 358-9 (Marquesas); 360-1 (Niue); 310 (Rotuma); 272, 276 (Society); cf. Samoa, III 344: tribute paid by "tenants," III 295, 301, 358-9 (Marquesas); 358 (Rarotonga); 309, cf. 308 (Rotuma); 247, 263 (Samoa); 277, 357 (Society)
- Rulers of, (Mangaia): descendants of Mokoiro, I 257-8: great feasts managed by, I 254: lists referred to, I 253, 254, III 329: Mokoiro the first Ruler of Food, I 252, 253, 428, III 67, 329: office hereditary, I 254, III 377, 389: the priests of Mokoiro as, I 253-4: priests of Mokoiro and fishing, I 253-4, II 273, 324 and n. 4, III 329: priests of Mokoiro making food grow, I 254: and question of dates, I 258: and secondary line of sacred chiefs, I 255: *see also* Hervey Is. I 429, III 329, Samoa, I 429, III 321, and Tonga, I 429, III 324-5
- of sacred persons: commoner eating chief's food deprived of land (Paumotu), II 286: commoner eating chief's food dying (Samoa), III 73: commoner stealing chief's food falling ill (Rarotonga), III 84: eating of chief's food taboo (Samoa), III 73: eating of food touched by chief causing illness, III 74 (Samoa); 81, 82 (Society): eating food touched by chief taboo (Tonga), III 76: food of chiefs eaten by special attendants, II 397, 398 (Marquesas); 372, 373-4, 375 (Samoa): food of chiefs sacred (Society), III 77: food of first-born, not touched (Mangaia), III 200: food of high-priests taboo (Society), III 81: food of image-bearer taboo (Society), II 422, III 81: food left by chiefs thrown away (Samoa), III 73: food thrown to chiefs (Samoa), III 73: food of winner of race cooked at special fire (Easter Is.), I 400: persons touching chief's food fed (Tonga), III 76-7: touching chief's food taboo (Samoa), III 73: vessels used by king destroyed (Society), III 80: women not eating men's food (Society), II 393: *see also* eating apart, etc. *under* Eating
- supply, control and maintenance: III 320-42; 341 (Easter Is.); 341 (Ellice); 340 (Fotuna); 329-31 (Hervey); 331-3

INDEX

429

- (Marquesas); 335 (Niue); 333-5 (Paumotu); 335-9 (Rotuma); 321-4 (Samoa); 326-9 (Society); 341-2 (Tikopia); 340 (Tokelau); 324-6 (Tonga): bread-fruit store, each person contributing to, (Mangareva), III 334: bread-fruit stored in pits, III 334 (Mangareva); 331 (Marquesas): chiefs and, I 429-30, III 320-1, 399; (Marquesas), III 129, 331; (Paumotu), III 334; (Rotuma), III 339; (Samoa), III 321-2; (Society), III 327-8; (Tikopia), ? III 341; (Tonga), III 325-6: council and, (Samoa) II 447, III 322-3, 399, *see also* Tonga, II 474, 475, III 325: each person contributing labour (Samoa), III 322; (Tonga), I 153, III 325; cf. Rotuma, III 310-11, 312-13: each landowner contributing to feast, etc. (Tonga), II 475: heads of sub-groups and, III 339, cf. 310, 312-13 (Rotuma); 322, cf. 323 (Samoa); ? 325 (Tonga): measures adopted *re* famines, III 341 (Ellice); 331 (Marquesas); 334 (Mangareva); 322 (Samoa); 328 (Society); 325, cf. 326 (Tonga): penalties for non-observance of council's decree *re*, (Samoa), III 322-3: planting, head of group or family allotting land for, (Niue), III 233, 304, 305, 335; (Rotuma), III 233, 309, 312, 313, 339; (Samoa), II 445, III 238, cf. 240, 243-4, 258-9, 260, 261, 322: planting, sister consulted by brother *re*, (Samoa) II 103: *rahui* for chief's heirs (Society), I 186, 187-8, II 117, III 328: regulation of consumption of food by council (Samoa), III 323, 324: regulation of food supply by old men (Tokelau), III 340: regulation of food supply by Tubu (Tonga), I 153, 429, III 324-5: tabooing coconuts, etc. before feast, III 340 (Fotuna); 334-5 (Mangareva); 332 (Marquesas); 324, cf. II 447 (Samoa); 328 (Society); 326 (Tonga): tabooing coconuts, etc. to preserve supply (Ellice), III 341; (Marquesas), III 331-2; (Tikopia), III 341-2; (Tokelau), III 340; (Tonga), I 153, III 325, 326: tabooing food for offering to Tangaroa (Samoa), III 324: tabooing food, term for incantation (Society), III 329: taboos imposed by council (Samoa), III 241, 323-4: taboos imposed by individuals, III 257; 159 (Marquesas): taboos imposed by king, chiefs, III 340, cf. 361 (Fotuna); 129, 331, 332-3 (Marquesas); 330? (Rarotonga); 324 (Samoa); 328-9 (Society); 341, 342 (Tikopia); 326 (Tonga): taboos imposed by priests, III 334 (Mangareva); 332-3 (Marquesas): taboos, pigs taken to king on removal of, III 329, cf. 357 (Society); 326 (Tonga): taboos removed by king, III 340 (Fotuna); 326 (Tonga): *see also* tree-planting at birth of child, III 281
 — — magically affected by chiefs, etc.: chiefs blighting trees, etc. with glance (Samoa), III 74, 75, 321: dead *mua* procuring good crops (Rotuma), III 337, 339 *n. 2*, cf. 336, *see also* libations to dead *sou* at beginning of season, III 336: dead *tuitonga* procuring good crops, III 351: king, etc. increasing number of chickens (Easter Is.), I 396, 399, 402-3, II 296, III 341: king's influence on vegetation (Fotuna), III 340; (Niue), I 354, III 37, 335; (Society), III 327; (Tonga), I 158, cf. 162-3, III 351: kings responsible for famines (Mangaia), III 330; (Niue), I 354, III 335; cf. Paumotu, III 333: priest consulted about weather (Ellice), II 439: priest's influence on vegetation (Marquesas), II 428, III 331; ? (Paumotu), III 333; (Rotuma), III 336-7, 339: priests protecting crops, etc. (Easter Is.), III 341: rain, etc. controlled by king (Fotuna), III 340, cf. 38: rain prayed for by king's son (Easter Is.), I 398: Ruler of Food making food grow (Mangaia), III 329: the *sou* representing dying and reviving god? (Rotuma), III 335-9: wind controlled by king (Society), III 327
 Forts: of the Taipii (Marquesas), I 308: the "Tongan wall"? (Samoa), III 250, cf. 251: walled fort of Manono (Samoa), III 253
 Fotu (Samoa ua Fotu): descendants' influence over descendants of Lafai, II 104: as father's sister, having casting vote *re* war and peace, II 104: Fijian "brothers" of, settling in Savai'i, I 66-8, cf. 62-3: keeping peace between sons of her "brother," I 63, 67, II 103, 104, 333, 337-8: marrying Savai'i chief, I 67: "sister" of Va'asilifiti, I 62-3, 66-7; *see also* Fotuosamoa family, II 92
 Fotuna (Horne Islands): conquering and conquered parties, I 362-6, 425: districts and villages, I 362, 367: Fijian element in, I 367-8: Samoan descent of islanders, I 367: and Tikopia, I 368-9: and Tonga, I 142, 143, 167, 368: tribes in, I 362-7
 — — — kings: appointing feasts, I 363: carried, III 88: consulting council of chiefs, I 363, III 134, cf. III 135: crops and rain controlled by, III 340, cf. 38: no dual kingship system? I 367, 421: election of, I 363, cf. 366-7, 421, II 495, III 205: and food-offerings, I 363: god incarnate in, I 363, 421, III 38, 340: head chief of conquerors suzerain of island? I 362-7: head chief of Tua group generally suzerain? I 363-6: as high priests, I 363, III 38: human sacrifice ordered by, I 363, III 38: illness cured

- by, III 340: list, I 363–4: might be deposed, I 363, 366, III 213: power, III 134–5: succeeded by brother, I 364, III 382: suzerainty over whole island, I 368, 421, III 135: taboo imposed by, III 340, 361: taboo removed by (turtle ceremony), II 293
- Fowls:** cocks kept for feathers (Marquesas), II 283: eaten at annual feasts (Marquesas), II 283: not eaten, II 302 (Duff); 282 (Marquesas): eating of, causing illness (Marquesas), II 282–3: figure of cock on sails (Tonga), II 321: incarnation of Moso (Samoa), II 223–4: (incarnations) converts eating, giving feathers to god (Samoa), II 226, 244: kava exchanged by “Tangaroans” for, (Samoa) I 98–9, 128: not killed (Duff), II 302: Miru chief, etc. able to increase number of, (Easter Is.) I 396, 398–9, II 296, III 341: regulation of consumption of, III 324 (Samoa); 326 (Tonga): of subjects, taken by chief, III 362–3 (Easter Is.); 349 (Tonga)
- Funafuti** (Ellice group): connection with Nukulaelae, etc. I 378: deriving coconut from Gilberts, III 315, 317: land divided by Touassa and Erivada, III 315, 316–17
- **kings:** called *tupu*, I 378, 379, II 364: consulting council, I 379: elected, I 379, III 206, 383: lists referred to, I 379–80, III 316: might be deposed, III 213: power, III 362: Samoan descent, I 378: sub-chief the active administrator, I 378: succession alternating between special families, I 378–80, 430, 431, III 206, 383, 393
- Fune** (Samoa): founder of Tangaroa f. in Savai’i, I 63, 67, II 30–1, III 64: founding Safune, etc. II 103: giving wife to god Tangaroa for title, etc. I 63–4, 67, III 64–5: and Laifai, ancestors of Savai’i people, I 63, 64, 65, 67: and Lafai, father’s sister keeping peace between, I 63, 67, II 103, 104, 333, 337–8
- Funeral ceremonies:** chiefs acting as priests at, (Rotuma) III 44: dead chief’s body carried about on bier (Samoa), I 107, cf. lamprey god, II 225: feast on anniversary of death (Marquesas), III 332: female mourners at, (Tonga) II 195–6: mother’s brother digging nephew’s grave (Tikopia), II 211: secondary priests performing, (Marquesas) II 429, 430, 431: sister and sister’s child, duties at brother’s funeral (Samoa), II 161–2, 171–2: sister’s daughter at mother’s brother’s funeral (Tineh and Mumui), Tonga, II 194, *and tree*, 191: taboo on food after funeral of *tuitonga*, III 326: *tuitonga fefine* at funeral of *tuitonga*, II 196, 197–8
- Futuna**, New Hebrides, districts, I 414
- Genealogies:** accuracy questioned, I 17–18, III 62: all members of family not named in (Samoa), II 93, 94: of chiefs, showing divine descent, III 61–3; 67–9 (Hervey); 70–1 (Paumotu); 63–5 (Samoa); 66–7 (Society); 65–6 (Tonga): and computation of time, I 12–18: falsification of Malietoa pedigree (Samoa), I 61: feasts held on child’s learning songs and, (Marquesas) II 203: kept secret (as title-deeds), Society, II 66, 67–8, 75: knotted strings as memory aids (Marquesas), II 203: learnt by chiefs (Marquesas), II 203: learnt by king’s son before inauguration (Paumotu), III 204: of maternal lines most important (Marquesas), II 120–1, 203–4: not primarily lists of title-holders (Samoa), II 93: taught by certain priests (Marquesas), II 203: *see also under names of chiefs; see also Traditions, etc.*
- Gerontocracy** and dual people, I 8, *see also Old people*
- Girdles**, *see maro, maro-tea, maro-ura*
- Gods:** ancestors of chiefs, *see Divine descent, and also under names of chiefs or gods:* the “ancestors” of the worshipping chiefs (Society), II 64, 420: ark of god, III 49 (Samoa); 34 (Society): avoidance of name of, *see under Names:* chief gods only approached on important occasions, I 222 *and n.* 1: chief gods “personified” in natural phenomena (Samoa), II 220: children bearing names of, *see under Names:* of “clans,” II 302 (Duff Is.); 218–19, 221–2, 304 (Samoa); 298, 299–301 (Tikopia); 252, 258–9 (Tonga): “clans” each having own gods, legends, etc. (Mangaia), I 258, II 43, 138, 345–6, *see also spirit tree* at Avaiki, III 299–300: of “clans,” incarnate in birds, fish, etc. II 302 (Duff); 271–2, 273 (Hervey); 304 (Samoa); 298, 299–301 (Tikopia); 252, 258–9 (Tonga): of “clans,” and sinfulness of killing “fellow-worshippers” (Mangaia), II 346–7: of “clans,” *see also under names of gods and chiefs, etc.:* classes of, II 218 *and n.* 2, 219, 220 (Samoa); 438 (Uvea): consultation of, *see Consultation, Divination and Omens:* dedication to, *see under Dedication:* of districts (Society), I 182, 214–15, II 41: of districts (with incarnations), II 289 (Rotuma); 218–19, 220, 221–2 (Samoa); 258–9 (Tonga): of families (with incarnations), II 294 (Ellice); 288 (Paumotu); 288, 290 (Rotuma); 218–19, 220, 221–2, 227, 304 (Samoa); 293–4 (Tokelau); 252 (Tonga): of families, incarnations as death omens (Samoa), II 251: family god angered by failure of respect to sister (Samoa), II 161:

INDEX

431

- family god and improper marriages (Samoa), II 124: family god of Pomare chiefs, I 208, 243: family gods invoked at turtle offering (Paumotu), II 286: family gods prayed to, etc. by family (Samoa), II 251, 304–5, III 40; (Society), III 44: great gods alone incarnate? (Tonga), II 252, cf. 253: great gods incarnate, II 303 (New Hebrides); ? 301–2 (Ongtong Java); 231–2?, 304 (Samoa); 262, 266, cf. 264, 265–6 (Society): great gods not incarnate? (Samoa) II 219: home in west, I 3: incarnation, *see that title*; *see also under* Deification of men (during life): as incubi and succubi (Samoa), II 240: of individuals (with incarnations), II 219, 226 (Samoa); 270–1 (Society); ? 293 (Uvea): inspiring men, *see under* Inspiration: invocation of, *see* Invocation: living on earth (Ongtong Java), II 301; (Samoa), I 49, 53, 89; (Tonga), II 255–6: living in or under the sea (Ongtong Java), II 301; (Rotuma), II 290: living underground (Samoa, pre-Tangaroan), I 48, 94–5, 100: men worshipping male gods, women female gods (Tahiti), II 425: “national,” (Mangaia), II 272 *and n.* 12; (Samoa), II 304; (Society), I 182, 214–15, II 41; (Tikopia), II 298; *see also* Niue, II 291–2? *and* Uvea, II 293: of sea (Tonga), II 412–13: servants of, (Ongtong Java), II 301: of the skies (Easter Is.), I 398 (Ongtong Java), II 301; (Samoa, Tangaroa, etc.), I 49, 51, 57, 93, 94, 95, 96–7, 100, 102, 104; (Society), I 245; (Tikopia), II 301; (Tokelau), II 293; (Tonga, Tangaroa, etc.), I 105, 126: swearing innocence by emblems of, (Samoa) III 5–7, cf. Tonga, III 14–15: of “towns” (with incarnations) (Samoa), II 219: of “towns,” worship of (Samoa), III 40: of “trades,” god imparting skill to craftsmen (Mangaia), II 426–7, cf. Samoa, II 408: of “trades,” probably gods of families (Samoa), II 378: of “trades,” Tangaroa the god of artificers in Tonga, II 413: village god worshipped (Rotuma), II 290: of villages (with incarnations), II 291 (Niue); 290 (Rotuma); 218–19, 220, 221–2 (Samoa); ? 293 (Uvea): of war, *see* War-gods, *see also under special names*: *see also* Cult of the dead, and Spirits returning under the Dead; *also* Deification of men
- of the dead: Fe’e (Samoa), I 95, 127, II 221, 231, 233: Hikuleo (Tonga); I 95, II 83, 253: Kui (Ui) the blind, II 274 (Hervey); 288 (Paumotu); 267 (Society), *see also* Ongtong Java, II 301–2: Rongo (Mangaia), II 271: Savea Si’uleo (Samoa), I 48, 75, 95 *and n.* I, II 116, II 233
- Godfather, term (Society), II 199
- Government and governmental areas: the administrative councils electing the “king” (Fotuna), I 363, II 495, III 205; (Rotuma), II 495; (Samoa), I 85, II 14–17, 21, 31, III 176, cf. II 366; (Tahiti, *hiva*), II 42, 387–8, cf. III 17; *see also* Tonga, the *kau matua*, II 477 *and* III 186, cf. III 190: district governed by district council (Rotuma), I 357, II 54, 494–5; (Samoa), II 7, 446–7, 448, III 101, 323: districts governed by councillors (Samoa), II 14, 366, III 100, 101, 103, 104: division or district controlled by “capital,” (Samoa) II 15, 21, III 106, cf. I 42, 43, 44, II 3; *see also* Fiji, I 344: divisions governed by kings (Samoa), II 11–12: dual kingship, etc. *see under* Kingship: the family the basis of state, etc. (Rarotonga), II 44, 45; (Samoa), II 4, 16, 36, III 143; (Tonga), II 381–2; *see also* Society, II 199, the chief called “father”: family head governing family (Easter Is.), I 400–1; (Fotuna), I 368?; (Rarotonga), III 127, 232, 290; (Samoa), II 4, 6–7, III 179, cf. III 181, 366: government patriarchal (Easter Is.), I 393; (Marquesas), I 316, III 130; (Rotuma), III 134, 307; (Samoa), I 41 III 143: the *iatooi* governing sub-districts (Society), II 385–6, 388–9: island chiefs independent but acknowledging supremacy of Ra’iatea (Society), I 212: island governed by councillor? (Fakaopo), I 374; (Niue), II 402, III 133: island governed by family heads (Fakaopo), I 374, II 496: island governed by king (Easter Is.)? I 395; (Ellice), I 378, 380; (Mangareva), III 132, cf. I 331: island governed by king and chiefs (Ellice), I 378, 380, II 496; (Niue), I 355: local affairs not interfered with by head chief, III 164; (Fotuna), I 363, III 135; (Marquesas), ? III 131; (Samoa), III 103–4, 104–7, cf. 109–10; (Society), III 123, ? 125–6; (Tonga), I 157, cf. III 13: local government principle (Samoa), I 40, 42–3, 46, II 3, III 104–5: (sub-)chief governing with council of family heads (Niue), II 401, 402; (Rotuma), I 357, II 54, 494–5; (Samoa), II 332–3?, III 103, cf. I 45–6: sub-chiefs ruling own areas (Society), I 174, 176, 178–9, 180–1, cf. 206–7: sub-chiefs ruling own areas, but acknowledging suzerainty of head chief, I 427 *n.* I, cf. III 164, 396; (Easter Is.), I 395; (Fiji), I 344, II 51; (Fotuna), I 363, cf. 367–8, III 135; (Mangaia), I 262–3, II 361; (Marquesas), I 317, 318, 319–20, 321–3; II 48, 490–1, III 128, 131; (Rarotonga), I 278–80, 281, cf. I 269, II 393–5, III 127; (Rotuma), I 357–9, cf. 356; (Samoa), III 99–100, 105–6, cf. 57; (Society), I 197, III 122–3, 125, 276, cf.

- 273; (Tikopia), I 410–11, 412–13; (Tonga), I 131–2, 133–5, 153–4, 157–8, 167–8, III 119, cf. III 13: suzerainty over whole area not permanent? (Hao Is.), I 336–7; (Niue), I 352–4; (Marquesas), I 316–18, II 490–1; (Mangareva), I 333–334; (Rotuma), I 356 and n. 2, 357–9; (Samoa), I 74–5, cf. 71; (Tahiti), I 171 and n. 4, 184–6, 192 n. 5, 203, 206–7, 208, II 341–2, cf. I 196, 199, III 79; (Tonga), I 167–9, cf. 134: the *usoali'i* governing (Samoa), II 377: village areas governed by sub-councils (Samoa), II 4, 5, 6–8: village council managing village affairs (Samoa), II 447, III 178, 323: *see also* Administration of justice
- Grandchild**: term for, II 201 (Marquesas); 206 (Niue); 201 (Rarotonga); 149 (Samoa); 199 (Society); 210 (Tikopia); 181 (Tonga): term for child used for, II 149 (Samoa); 210 (Tikopia): term used classificatorily (Tonga), II 181
- Grandfather**, term for, II 206 (Niue); 204 (Paumotu); 199 (Society)
- Grandmother**, term for (Paumotu), II 204
- Grandparents**: term for, II 201 (Marquesas); 149 (Samoa); 210 (Tikopia); 181 (Tonga): term for father applied to, (Samoa), II 149: term including father's sister's husband (Duff Is.), II 213: term used classificatorily, II 210 (Tikopia); 181 (Tonga)
- Grasshoppers**: omens of death (Rarotonga), II 280, 315: spirits returning in, (Society), II 306
- Greetings** (Samoa): chiefly families in village-district greeted, II 22–3, 24, 26, cf. 13 n. 1: clan relations memorialized in, II 18, 27–8, 29, 30, 31, 32, 34, 36: each area and sub-area having own greeting, II 463: for Aana, II 465: for Afenga village-district, II 468–9: for Atua, II 466–7: for Leulumoenga village-district, II 465–6: for Lufilufi village-district, II 467: for Manu'a, II 469: for Samoa, II 464: for sub-district in Atua, II 468: for Tau village-district, II 469–70: for Tuamasanga, II 468: persons mentioned in, participating in *fono*, II 22–3, 159: pronounced by first speaker, II 462: right to attend *fono* recorded in? II 462–3: terms for, II 463, cf. 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469: *see also* Society, II 489, orator enumerating titles, etc., and Tonga, II 478, no greetings?
- Hades**: Sa la Fe'e (Samoa), I 95, cf. 102: *see also* Avaiki; Gods of the Dead; and Paradise
- Haerepo**, (Society): announcing celebration of ceremony, II 424–5: assistants of priests, II 422, 423: candidates for chieftainship and priesthood, II 422, 423, III 51: as night-watch and scouts, II 422: runners in the night, II 419 and n. 2, 421, 422, 423, 424: some men acting for life as, II 422: *see also* the *orero*, under Traditions, official recorders
- Hair**: baldness incurred through eating “totem” (Tonga), II 259, cf. Samoa, II 228: barber of chief, his “jester” (Samoa), II 372: buried when cut (Marquesas), II 203: connected with worship of dead woman (Paumotu), II 284–5: cut off and buried if “totem” killed (Rotuma), II 288: given to girl at first menstruation (Marquesas), II 203: (human) bone image worn on, to record unsatisfied vengeance (Marquesas), II 352: of king, cut at *marae* (Mangareva), I 335 and n. 4: lock on crown recording unsatisfied vengeance (Marquesas), II 351–2: person cutting hair of royal youth cursed by king (Easter Is.), I 399: of thief, burnt (Society), III 21: untying hair before house of *sou* (Rotuma), I 360 — head-dress: worn by king at ceremony (Paumotu), II 433: worn by winner of egg race (Easter Is.), I 400
- Ha-le-vao** (Niue god): connected with flying fox? II 292: same as Sa-le-vao (Samoa), II 292
- Hao Is.** (Paumotu): creation, I 339, III 71: genealogy of kings of, I 337: hereditary titles of kings of, III 222: no permanent king? I 336–7: *see also* Munanui
- Hata** title, and office of commander-in-chief (Tonga), I 146, 150–1
- Hau**, *see under* Chiefs, terms, etc.; *see also* *Tuihaatakalaia*, and *Tuikanokubolu*
- Hawaiki**, *Hawaiki*, etc. *see under* Avaiki
- Havea** Hikuleo, *see* Hikuleo
- Head**: of animal brought to sister (m.s.), (Samoa), II 103: of animal, etc. most honourable part (Samoa), II 103: beaten in honour of dead “totem” (Samoa), II 223, cf. 225, 244: of chief, anointed at inauguration, III 218 (Niue); 216 (Samoa): chief binding title to, (Samoa) III 214, 226, cf. I 49–50: of chief, sacred, III 215 (Samoa); 80 (Society): of chief, same term for “title” and (Samoa), III 227: cutting of, and blood feud (Society), I 188, II 344–5: cutting of, by female relations at wedding (Society), II 116: of eel, and origin of coconuts, *see under* Coconut trees: genealogy-cords placed on heads of mother's brother and father's sister (Marquesas), II 203–4: of goddess, and origin of turtle (Tonga), II 254–5, 260: of human victim, offered to Tangaroa (Tahiti), I 223: placing snake on, sign of respect (Tonga), II 253: sanctity removed by sprinkling water on, (Marquesas), III 217: of slain, cut off (Sa-

INDEX

433

- moa, II 305, 321: of turtle, due to king (Paumotu), I 336, II 80, 286, 287, 312; (Samoa), II 243, 311: uncovered at kava-drinking (Fiji), I 346: of victim, *see under* Human sacrifice
- Head-dress as insignia, *see under* Feather head-dress, *and* Turban
- Heavens (Society Is.): having ten strata, I 245: tenth heaven abode of highest gods, I 245: tenth heaven and Tane, I 245
- Hervey Islands, native names, I 250
- Hikuleo (Tonga): associated with sky, I 126: fishing up Manu'a, Fiji, and certain Tongan islands, I 105, 124, 126: god of dead, I 95, II 253: king of Bulotu, I 105: name Havea Hikuleo in full, I 116: not named in Nafanua myth, I 116-7: no priest serving? II 412, cf. 413 n. 2: souls of dead as posts in house of, II 83: tail of, II 253: "Tangaroan" god, worshipped in Savai'i and Tonga, I 115-17, cf. 105-6, 126: no temple dedicated to? II 412, cf. 413 n. 2: *tuitonga* descended from, I 142, III 65: *see also* Savea Si'uleo (Samoa)
- Hina, *see* Sina
- Hiro, *see* Iro (Hiro)
- Hiva, *see under* Councils (Society)
- Hivaoa (Marquesas): eels of Taipii and, I 306, 309, II 281: groups and areas, I 315-16: two lines of kings (brothers), I 315-16, 431, II 47
- Hoa and taio (Society), *see under* Strangers (adopted "friends")
- Hotumatua, *see under* Easter Is.
- House: of chief, with platform (Society), III 355: of chief, taboo (Easter Is.), I 397; (Society), III 77, 79-80; (Tonga), ? III 76: chief's sleeping house behind assembly-house (Samoa), II 469: entered by chief, taboo, III 80 *and n.* 1 (Society); 76 (Tonga); *see also* Samoa, III 73, Malietoa: entered by high-priest taboo (Paumotu), III 87: firstborn having sacred door (Mangaia), III 200: king and priest eating in new house (Easter Is.), I 398: large common house belonging to each "family" (Samoa), I 41, 45: of offender, destroyed (Mangaia), II 349, III 23; (Samoa), III 4, 8-10; (Society), III 19: village badge on ridge-beam (Samoa), II 318, 319: *see also* Assembly house
- House-building (Samoa), II 378, 408
- Huahine (Society): chiefs descended from two brothers, I 215, II 41: eight districts, I 182, 214-15, II 41: king carried, III 84: and Ra'iatea, I 215, 217: sovereignty held by two lines of kings in turn, I 215, 430, III 394: tributary to Puni, I 216
- Huanaki (Niue): and "creation" of Niue, etc. I 349-50: first king of Niue connected with, I 350-1: "house" of, I 350: naming the island, I 347: stone image of, I 350: swimming from Tonga to Niue, I 349
- Huapu Island (Marquesas), under a king, I 315, 320, 322, 323
- Human sacrifice: ears of prisoners thrown to ancestor eel (Tahiti), II 268: ears of victim, and confirmation of title to lands after war (Mangaia), III 288-9, 293: eye of victim offered to chief (Tahiti), II 73: head of victim buried before symbol of god (Society), I 223: head of victim preserved? (Marquesas), II 430: offered by king (Mangaia), I 256, 257, III 288: offered by king and priests (Fotuna), III 38: offered by priest (Society), II 73, 414: offered to deified daughter of *tuihatakalaua* (Tonga), I 148: offered to god Sama (Samoa), II 239: ordered by king (Fotuna), I 363, III 38; (Mangareva), III 132: (Tonga), I 151-2: priest announcing necessity for, (Easter Is.), II 439; (Marquesas), II 429, 431; (Society), I 205; II 420, 421; cf. Mangaia, II 426: punishment for refusal to provide victim (Society), III 19: reward for providing victim (Mangaia), III 288, 294: selection of victim by king (Mangaia), I 257; (Society), II 421, cf. III 19: victims brought in canoes (Tahiti), III 34: victims eaten (Marquesas), II 431: victims eaten by birds ("gods") (Society), II 262, cf. 261: victims' remains buried (Society), II 414: victims strangled (Marquesas), II 430: *see also* *Marae*, human sacrifice at, *and under* names of gods
- — observance of: on deification of priest (Marquesas), II 429: at feast of first-fruits (Tonga), III 350: after fighting on sacred ground? (Tonga), II 340: mock sacrifice on eating of "totem" (Samoa), II 247-8: mock sacrifice of offenders (Samoa), III 5, 11-12: before peace made (Mangaia), I 253, 256, cf. 257, II 348, III 288-9: to prolong life of *tuitonga*, I 151: if supplies withheld from chief (Society), III 20: before war (Mangaia), I 256, II 348 *and n.* 1; (Society), II 343: during war (Society), I 223, II 419
- — persons chosen as victims: common people (Hervey), II 395; (Mangareva), III 132; (Marquesas), II 399: criminals (Society), III 16-17, 20, cf. 354, 355: devoted families, children dedicated to god of other parent (Hervey), II 118: devoted families, the defeated tribes (Hervey), II 118: devoted persons escaping through warning of bird (Society), II 263: enemies (Marquesas), II 431: man bearing name

- of sacred chief safe (Marquesas), III 156, 227: slaves, II 399–400 (Marquesas); 392 (Society): strangers (Mangaia), I 258, 259–60: the three first prisoners in war (Society), II 419
- Husband:** avoidances between wife's brother and, (Tikopia), II 212: of daughter, called "father" (Tikopia), II 209: of daughter, called "nephew" (New Hebrides), II 213: husbands of two sisters, "brothers" (Tikopia), II 210: living with wife's family, II 123 (Ellice); 119–20 (Hervey); 122 (Rotuma); 122 (Tokelau); cf. Samoa, II 108–9: same term for either spouse (Tonga), II 178: term for, II 205 (Niue); 204 (Paumotu); 148 (Samoa); 198 (Society); 209 (Tikopia): and wife, term for (Fotuna), II 207
- Husband's brother:** having rights over wife (Marquesas), II 121, cf. 397 and *n. 1*: marrying widow (levirate), Samoa, II 125: sometimes allowed to marry wife's sister (Samoa), II 125, 129
- and brother's wife, relationship between wife's sister, etc. and, (Tikopia) II 210
- brother's sons, called "sons" (Tonga), II 178
- wife, called "sister" (Tonga), II 179
- father: called "father," II 209, 210 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga): and wife's father, term for, (Tikopia), II 210
- mother, called "mother," II 209, cf. 210 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga)
- sister, sometimes marrying wife's brother (Samoa), II 125, 129
- sister's descendants, not marrying wife's brother's descendants (Samoa), II 125, 129
- Iatoai*, *see under* Councillors (Society)
- Iddeah** (Tetuanui), Tahiti: infringing *rahui* for Pura's son, I 188, 216–17: political energy of, II 117–18: a Raiatean princess, I 216: wife of Pomare I, I 188, cf. 216
- Ilamutu** (*iamutu*, etc.), applied to Sister-and-brother bond, Sister's child, Sister's daughter, Sister's descendants, Sister's son, *see under those titles*
- Illness** (and death), cause: anger of god, II 429 (Marquesas), 124 (Samoa): chief causing illness, III 84 (Rarotonga); 44 (Rotuma); 75, 321 (Samoa): dead relations causing illness, II 343 (Society), cf. Ongtong Java, II 301, Paumotu, II 436–7: family quarrelling, II 354 (New Hebrides); 343 (Society); 354 (Tikopia): killing of relation (Mangaia), II 346: minor gods causing illness (Rotuma), II 290–1: priest causing illness, etc. II 432, cf. 429 (Marquesas); 420 (Society); *see also* Ellice, II 439: swelling of the body, etc. III 72–3, 74 (Samoa); 342 (Tikopia); 77 (Tonga); cf. god entering body of worshipper eating incarnation, etc. Samoa, II 222, 223, 224, 225, 244, 247: violation of taboo (Tikopia), III 342: *see also* Cursing, and Sister's curse
- curing of: by god of locality, II 290 (Rotuma); 250 (Samoa); 300 (Tikopia): by god-priest (Samoa), II 240: by head of family? (Samoa), II 239–40: by king (Fotuna), III 340: by priest, II 439 (Ellice); 429 (Marquesas); 438 (Rotuma): by priestess (Rotuma), II 290: secondary priests as surgeons (Marquesas), II 429: by sorcerers (Samoa), II 407: by the *tamaha* (Tonga), II 187, 189
- and duties of relations: brother present at birth of sister's child (Samoa), II 160: mother's brother and son nursing sister's son (Samoa), II 155, 172: "sisters" present when "brothers" tattooed? (Samoa), II 160–1: *see also under* Funeral ceremonies
- treatment: chief offering sacrifice to god (Tikopia), II 300, III 45: chief praying for sick, III 44 (Rotuma); 43 (Society); 45 (Tikopia); 44 (Uvea): family god prayed to (Samoa), II 251: fanning sick with coconut leaves (symbol of god), Samoa, II 228, 250, cf. symbol of Nonia, II 250: god invoked (Tonga), III 42, 49–50: human sacrifice to prolong life of *tuitonga*, I 151–2: patient taken to god's house (Tonga), III 49, cf. Ellice, II 439: prayers and offerings to god (Tonga), III 49: priests praying at *marae* for chief (Tahiti), I 228: *see also* Samoa, II 251, taking omens from incarnation of family god
- Images:** of animals, etc. at *marae* (Society), II 322–3: annual stripping and re-adornment of, (Huahine), III 81–2: as boundary gods, III 318? (Easter Is.); 278 (Society): deified by high priest only (Paumotu), II 435: and emblems of gods, in front of canoes, etc. II 322 (Society); 324 (Hervey Is.); cf. Samoa, II 317–19: of fish gods (Society), II 266–7: of fishermen's god (Rarotonga), II 324: gods entering (Society), II 261: of human bone, representing ancestor gods (Marquesas), II 352: image of Huanaki (Niue), I 350: image of Oro, *see under* Oro (Tahiti): image of Tane (Huahine), I 214–15, III 81–2: kept in house in *marae* (Huahine), III 81–2: porter-guardians of, sanctity (Marquesas), II 430–1; (Society), II 422, III 81–2: porter-guardians of, terms for, II 430 (Marquesas); 414, 415–16 (Society); *see also* Samoa, II 407

INDEX

435

- Immortality, Upolu people discussing question of (Samoa), I 49
- Ina, *see* Sina
- Inauguration: anointment with coconut oil, etc. (Mangaia), III 217; (Mangareva), I 329, 330, III 218, cf. simulated sprinkling of king's son, III 217–18; (Niue), I 351, 352, II 80, III 218; (Rarotonga), III 217; (Samoa), II 111, III 216: anointment, etc. and transmission of sanctity, II 111, III 215–16, 227: bathing of king (Mangareva), I 329, 330, III 218; (Niue), I 348, 351, 352, III 218; (Society), II 265–6, cf. III 217; *see also* purification of *sou* (Rotuma), III 336, and purification of *tuitonga fefine* (Tonga), II 111–12, 113, III 216: bathing of priest (Mangaia), III 217: calling out the title (Samoa), I 50, II 374; (Tonga), III 186–7, 188, 189, 191; (Uvea), III 205–6; cf. Mangaia, III 202: family name, etc. not assumed till after public ceremony (Samoa), III 181, 183, cf. 185: of Finau Moengangono, (Tonga) III 187, 191, 192 *n.* 1, 193: at *fono* or public ceremony (Mangaia), III 202; (Rarotonga), III 202, 203; (Rotuma), III 336; (Samoa), II 479, III 185; (Tonga), III 186–7, 188, 190, 191, 192, 193, cf. 189; (Uvea), III 205: (group) god entering chief invested with (group) title, II 111, III 227; cf. Samoa, III 40–1, Society, I 219, III 77, and Tonga, III 76: held in special *marae* (Rarotonga), II 77; (Mangareva), I 333; (Tonga, *tuikano-kubolu*), III 189, cf. *tuitonga*, II 196; *see also* Tahiti, I 172, 188: human sacrifice at time of (Easter Is.), I 395; (Mangaia), I 253, 256, 257, III 288: investing king with *maro* (Mangaia), III 217; (Society), I 223, II 423–4, cf. I 172, 188: of king (Society), I 223, II 265–6, 421–2, 423–4, III 79, 326–7: of King George (Tonga), II 478, 479: of King George's heir (Tonga), III 188: of king, by high priest (Rarotonga), II 428; (Society), II 421, cf. 421–2 and 423–4: of king's son as priest (Mangareva), III 334–5: of Makea chief (Rarotonga), II 77, III 217: mat-distribution at title-granting (Samoa), *see under* Mats: new *marae* built at time of, (Society), II 68: offerings made to god at, (Mangareva), III 334–5; (Tikopia), II 300: of priests, by high priest (Paumotu), II 436: of sacred king (Mangaia), III 217; (Rotuma), III 335–6; (Tonga), II 111–12, 113, III 216, 369; (Uvea), III 205–6: of sacred king by secular king (Mangaia), I 255–6; (Uvea), III 205–6: of secular king (Easter Is.), ? I 394–5, 404, 405–7, cf. 395–6, 399–400; (Mangaia), I 253, 256, 257, 419, III 44, 202, 288–9; (Tonga), III 76, 186–95: of secular king, by sacred king (Mangaia), I 256, 257, 419, III 44, 202: and stone seat, etc. in *marae* (Mangareva), I 329, 333; (Niue), II 80; (Rarotonga), II 77, III 217; (Society), II 77 *n.* 5: trees cognizant of inauguration of king (Society), III 79, 326–7: *see also* proclamation of infant chief (Society), III 195–6
- Incarnation (in animals, etc.): in animals, birds, etc. *see those titles*: in animals, etc. and totemism, II 217–18: appearance of “totem” before death, II 309; ? 279 (Mangaia); ? 283, ? 284 (Marquesas); 290–1 (Rotuma); 251 (Samoa); 271, 306 (Society); ? 259, ? 261 (Tonga): association of “totem” with birth, II 278 (Hervey); 257–8, 260 (Tonga): dead “totem” mourned, etc. by worshippers, II 223, 225 (Samoa); 263 (Society); 259 (Tonga): descent from “totem,” II 308–9; ? 294 (Ellice); ? 280–1, ? 284 (Marquesas); ? 291 (Rotuma); 264, 267, 268, 270, cf. 265–6, 269 (Society); 299 (Tikopia); 252, 260 (Tonga); *see also* Hervey, II 278: human origin of “totem,” II 281, 284 (Marquesas); 245 (Samoa); 299 (Tikopia); ? 254–5, ? 258, ? 260 (Tonga): incarnation of great gods, family gods, etc. *see under* Gods: incarnation in men (Samoa), II 220, 221, 239–40, *see also under* Deification, etc. (during life), and Inspiration: incarnation in parts of animals, etc. II 273? (Mangaia); 226–8 (Samoa); 252–3, 260 (Tonga): physical peculiarities of “totem,” respected (Samoa), II 246–7: same god with two incarnations in one family (Samoa), II 221, 243: same god worshipped in different forms by different families (Hervey), II 271–2; (Samoa), II 221, 223–4 and *n.* 7, 225 and *n.* 2: and spirits returning in animal form, II 261, 315–16, *see also under* the Dead, spirits returning: temporary?, II 261; 252, 255 (Tonga): “totem” helping worshipper, II 309; 272, 273, 278–9 (Mangaia); ? 281, ? 282, ? 283, ? 284 (Marquesas); 290 (Rotuma); 250–1 (Samoa); ? 263–4, 265, 270, cf. 266–7 (Society); 300 (Tikopia); 256, 267, 261 (Tonga); *see also* Samoa, II 241, 242, worshippers wearing emblems of god in battle: “totem” imparting information (Tonga), II 256, *see also* Omens: “totem” injuring non-worshippers (Tikopia), II 299: “totem” not injuring worshipper, II 289 (Rotuma); 250 (Samoa); 265–6? (Society); 260 (Tonga): “totem” killing forsworn worshipper (Samoa), II 223: worshipper wearing leaves associated with god becoming bald (Samoa), II 228: *see also* animal, etc. names given to villages (Samoa), II 318–19; and animals, etc.

- as district badges, *under* Canoes, Cloth, Houses, Tattooing
- eating of “totem”: allowed in certain cases, II ? 225, 243, ? 244 (Samoa); 300 (Tikopia); ? 257, cf. 260 (Tonga): birthmarks due to mother’s eating “totem”? (Tonga), II 257–8: by convert (Samoa), II 226: limitation of taboo, II 309, 309–10, 311–15: persons eating “totem” killed or banished (Tokelau), II 293–4: by persons not worshipping (Samoa), II 222, 223, 226, 229: by worshipper, causing swelling (Tongareva), II 294, cf. Samoa, II 244: worshipper eating “totem” dying, II 282? (Marquesas); 222, 223, 224, cf. 224–5, 247 (Samoa); 294 (Tokelau): worshipper eating “totem” taking emetic (Samoa), II 223, 248: by worshipper, entailing baldness (Tonga), II 259: by worshipper, entailing a squint (Samoa), II 224: by worshipper, mock human sacrifice (Samoa), II 247–8
 - not eating “totem”: clan not eating clan “totem” (Duff Is.), I 413, II 302; (Tikopia), II 298, 300: district group not eating district “totem” (Tonga), II 259, 260: family not eating family “totem,” II 294 (Ellice); 222, 223, 224, 225, 227, 228 (Samoa); 293–4 (Tokelau); 252 (Tonga): individual not eating personal “totem” (Samoa), II 226: islanders not eating island “totem”? (Samoa), II 224: village-district “totem” not eaten by local group (Samoa), II 223, ? 224: whole group not eating certain “totems” (Tikopia), II 298; cf. Samoa, II 222: worshippers not eating “totem,” II 309; 272, 273 (Mangaia); ? 281, ? 282, ? 282–3 (Marquesas); ? 287–8 (Paumotu); ? 295–6 (Manihiki); 223, 225–6, 229 (Samoa); ? 263, 270 (Society); 252 (Tonga); 294, cf. 295 (Tongareva); ? 293 (Uvea)
 - injuring or killing “totem”: accidental killing, propitiation for, (Rotuma), II 288: convert killing “totem” (Samoa), II 223, 226: cooking of “totem” by others not allowed (Samoa), II 225: cooking of “totem,” worshippers helping *re*, (Samoa), II 224–5: killing of “totem” causing spring to fail (Tikopia), II 299: worshipper injuring “totem” dying (Samoa), II 222, 223, 224, 225: worshipper not injuring “totem” (Samoa), II 222, 224, 226: worshipper killing person injuring “totem,” II 224 (Samoa), cf. Tonga, II 253, 255, 256: worshipper not killing “totem,” II 309; 288 (Rotuma); ? 262–3, ? 270 (Society); 298, cf. 298–9 (Tikopia); 253 (Tonga)
 - worship of totem: annual pilgrimages to “totem” (Society), II 268: family “totem” revered by family hereditarily (Samoa), II 223: family “totem” sacred to family, II 273 (Mangaia); 227 (Samoa); 252 (Tonga): name of “totem” taboo to worshippers (Samoa), II 223: offerings made to “totem,” II 223, 224, 226, 245, 246 (Samoa); 262 (cf. 263–4), 266, 268 (Society); 299, 300 (Tikopia); 256, cf. 253, 259 (Tonga): personal “totem” sacred to worshipper, II 226 (Samoa); 270–1 (Society); 293 (Uvea): “totem” borne on litter (Samoa), II 224, 225: “totem” consulted (Society), II 270: “totem” having priest, II 289, 290 (Rotuma); 259 (Tonga): “totem” invoked, II 300 (Tikopia); 256 (Tonga): “totem” prayed to, II 245, 250 (Samoa); 262, 266, cf. 264, 265 (Society); 300 (Tikopia): “totem” not prayed to (Society), II 262: “totem” sacred to worshippers, II 281, 282? (Marquesas); 229 (Samoa): “totems” sacred throughout whole area, II 291–2 (Niue); 298 (Tikopia); 293 (Uvea), cf. Samoa, II 222: “totems” worshipped (Samoa), II 220, 224: town “totem” sacred to whole town (Samoa), II 219, cf. 221–2
- Incest laws and exogamy, II 130–4
- Incision: age when boy incised (Paumotu), III 204. boy receiving name at time of (Samoa), III 151: boy smeared with turmeric (Tikopia), II 211: performed by mother’s brother (Tikopia), II 211: *tuitonga* not incised (Tonga), III 75
- Infanticide: to equalize rank of parents (Society), II 115–16: infants killed appearing as grasshoppers (Society), II 306: and preservation of rank (Society), II 68, 114–16
- “Inheritance”: use of term in book, II 87–8, III 364: *see also* Succession
- Initiation: of brother’s son, importance of father’s sister at, (Banks), II 164: incision, tattooing, seclusion and education of chief’s son (Paumotu), III 204, 217–18, cf. 222, 380
- Insects: gods incarnate in, II 272, 273, cf. 278 (Hervey); 221, 225, 251 (Samoa); ? 256 (Tonga): *see also under* the Dead, spirits returning
- Insignia: drum (Rarotonga), I 265, *see also* “Drum of Peace” (Mangaia): kava bowl (Rarotonga), I 265: kava leaf (Rarotonga), I 265: of *sou* (Rotuma), III 336: of *sou*, worn by representative at “dying god” feast (Rotuma), III 337, 338–9: not worn by chief on ordinary occasions (Marquesas), III 130: *see also under* Coconut leaves; Conch-shell, sounding of; Feather head-dress; Fly-flap; *Maro*; Staff; and Turban
- Inspiration: of chiefs (Samoa), II 474, III 46; (Society), II 484, III 124; (Tonga),

INDEX

437

- II 411, 412, III 34–5, 41: dying father “breathing” on heir (Samoa), III 165–6, 223–4, cf. Society, II 419–20, III 168, 223: each deity inspiring special individual (Tonga), II 410: god entering man unawares (Society), II 422–3: gods speaking through men (Samoa), II 239, 240: gods speaking through priests (Mangaia), II 425–6: of head of branch, by clan god (Tonga), II 411 and *n.* 3, 412, III 35, 41–2, cf. *tuikanokubolu*, III 76: of head of family, by family god (Samoa), II 239: of individuals, III 54–5; (Marquesas), III 52: induced by invocation (Society), II 423: induced by kava-drinking (Society), II 484: of *matabule* (Tonga), II 412: of orator-chiefs (Samoa), II 460, 473–4, III 46–7, 49: permanent inspiration (Society), II 418, 423: periodical inspiration (Society), II 418: of priests (Hervey), II 271, 278, 425–6; (Marquesas), II 428, 429; (Niue), II 438; (Rotuma), II 438; (Society), II 414, cf. 416, 418, 420, 484 III 124; (Tonga), II 252, 409, 410, 411–12, 413, III 35; (Uvea), II 438–9: by souls of dead (Uvea), II 438–9: symptoms of, convulsions, II 409; (Fotuna), III 38; (Tonga), II 413–14: symptoms of, depression, etc. (Tonga), II 413: symptoms of, fainting, etc. (Tonga), II 413: *tuitonga* never inspired (Tonga), I 162, 419, cf. II 413: of women (Tonga), II 413–14; (Uvea), II 438–9
- Inspired persons (priests, etc.): ascending sacred altar (Society), II 422: body sacred (Society), II 422: conniving with priests of *marae* (Society), II 421: corporation of, (Society) II 418: human sacrifice to, (Society) II 419: importance in war (Society), II 419: inspired priests deferred to by chiefs, II 420 (Society); 413 (Tonga): at *marae*, no specific number (Society), II 422: name of inspiring god assumed by, (Society), II 418; cf. Tonga, *tuikanokubolu*, III 76: performing *tours de force* (Society), II 423: priests, etc. not deferred to when not inspired, II 438 (Niue); 438 (Rotuma); 422 (Society); 411–12 (Tonga): priests, etc. as oracles (words obeyed) (Niue), II 438; (Rotuma), II 438; (Society), II 418; (Tonga), I 148, ? II 413: rank immaterial (Society), II 423: supplanting augurers (Society), II 418–19
- Invocation: accompanied by dances, etc. (Ongtong Java), II 301: ceremony, II 300 (Tikopia); 256 (Tonga): by chief (Mangareva), III 71; (Niue), II 437–8, III 54; (Society), III 34; (Tonga), II 412, III 42: chief invoking clan god (Tikopia), II 300: chief or member of family invoking family god (Tonga), II 256, III 50: by family heads (Tonga), II 412, III 42: of god, to inspire man (Society), II 423: invoking death of thief (Samoa), III 6, 7: by *matabule* (Tonga), II 413, III 49–50: by priests (Niue), II 437–8, III 54; (Paumotu), II 436; (Tahiti), III 34; (Tonga), II 413
- Iro (Aitutaki, Hervey Is.): not sending turtle to king, II 277–8, 311: Ruatapu descended from, I 285, 293
- (Hiro), Easter Is.: god of sky, prayed to for rain, I 398
- (Rarotonga): ancestor of Pa family, I 272–3: association with centipede, II 278: and food supply, III 330: giving god Tangaroa, etc. to Tangia, I 272: at Rarotonga before Tangia, I 265. Tangia adopting son of, I 234, 270, 272–3, III 68
- (Hiro), Society Is.: ancestor of Borabora kings, II 226, III 66: ancestor of Pomare family, I 213: ancestor of Ra’iatea kings, I 213, 220–1, 226, III 66: first god-king of Ra’iatea, I 220: god of thieves, III 21: Opoa *marae* consecrated to Oro by, I 213, 220, cf. 226, II 62–3: priest of, in Ra’iatea, an *areoi*, III 44: relationship to Oro, I 213, 220, 243: Tangaroa an ancestor of, I 220: a Tangaroan in Ra’iatea, I 233
- “Jesters,” *see* Servants, chief’s “jester”
- Karika (Rarotonga): descent from Rongo, I 265, III 67–8: land divided by, I 269, 271, III 293: land divided by Tangia and, I 270, 271: and Manu’a, I 266–7, 280: *marae* of Araitetonga built by, I 266, II 62, 77: *marae* of Araitetonga given by Tangia to, II 77: *marae* at Avarua built by, I 266, II 62: *marae* of, in Manu’a, I 267, cf. 266: marrying Tangia’s daughter, I 269, II 78: migration to Rarotonga, I 73, 234, 266, 270–1: and previous settlers I 235, 264–5: as priest, III 36: and Savai’i, Tonga and Rotuma, I 266–7: submitting to Tangia, I 269: Tangia aided by, I 234, 235, 269, II 77: Tangia adopting, I 269: and Tangia, and the beach road, I 269, 270, 271–2 and *n.* 1: and Tangia, founding the two great groups, II 62: Tangia marrying daughter of, I 268–9, II 78: and Tangia, organizing Rarotongan constitution, I 234, 270, 271–2, II 395, cf. 427: Tangia and the son of, I 270, 271: Tangia submitting to, I 268, 269, 271, 419, III 36, 329, cf. I 278–9: Tangia not submitting to, I 268–9, 271: *tuimani’a* identified with, I 267: and Uvea, I 266
- group, Makea chiefs: Atiu chief descended from, I 294: Avarua the home of, I 274, 277, 279, cf. Avarua

- in Aitutaki, I 283–4, *and* in Bukabuka, I 382: no branch descended from Taitē-ariki, I 273: clan branches under, I 273 *and* n. 5, II 78, cf. 77: consecrated in *marae* of own group and of Tangiia group, II 77: consecration, stone associated with, II 77, III 217: cuttlefish goddess of, II 275–7: district in north, I 278, 279, II 44: dual kingship, I 277–8, 431, III 394: genealogies referred to, I 265, 266, 273–4, III 67–8, 390: glance causing death, etc. III 84: governing Karika group, I 279: land of subjects not alienable by, III 291, 294: living near Araitetonga, II 77: Makea Rongooe and division of kingdom, I 273–4, 275, 276–7, III 211–12, 290, 358: Makea as royal title, I 265, 279–80: Makea, the son of Karika, I 270, 271: Makea title, and Rongo and Tane, I 265–6: and *marae* of Araitetonga, II 77–8, cf. 490, III 51–2, 127–8: and *marae* of Rangi Manuka, I 266: as priests, III 36: succession, I 277, cf. 278, III 390, 392: suzerainty over island, I 278–9, 280, 281, cf. II 78: and term *ariiki*, II 361–2: Tinomana group connected with branch of, I 273–4, 276–7, cf. 279, 281, II 78, III 68: and the “Tongan kingdom,” I 274, 277 *and* n. 2, 280
- Karioti*, *see* *Aerei*
- Kava: chief presiding at, III 400; (Samoa), II 12; (Uvea), I 371: chief’s “jester” as cup-bearer (Samoa), II 372: chief’s “jester” making (Samoa), II 373–4: chiefs’ morning kava (Tonga), II 382: cup named (Samoa), II 236: drinking kava as ordeal (Samoa), III 7: drunk at visits of chiefs (Tonga), II 382: at *fono*, II 448, 471 (Samoa); ? 478 (Tonga): inauguration of chief at kava feast, III 336 (Rotuma); 181, 185 (Samoa); 186–7, 188, 189, 191 (Tonga); 205 (Uvea): inducing inspiration? (Society), II 484: inspired priest presiding at, (Tonga) II 413: leaf as insignia of chief (Rarotonga), I 265, cf. Coconut leaves: *mata-bule* attending chiefs at, (Tonga) II 382: as peace offering? (Samoa), II 471: seating at kava drinking, *see* *under* Seating, etc.: *taupou* making (Samoa), II 453: uncovering of head on drinking of, (Fiji) I 346
- bowl: chiefs swearing allegiance by (Tonga), III 14–15: consecrated to god (Tonga), III 14–15, cf. bowl emblems of Tangaroa and Moso, Samoa, II 219, III 6: emblem of chieftainship (Rarotonga), I 266: of *tuitonga*, testing innocence by, III 14, 15 *and* n. 2, cf. Samoa (Moso), III 6
- chewers: “greeted” in Manu’a (Samoa), II 470, cf. Leulumoenga, II 466 *and* Lufilufi, II 467: of Malietoa, descendants of sister (Samoa), II 99: term for (Samoa), II 470: of *tui-manu’a*, divine origin (Samoa), I 50, II 470
- libations and offerings: libation to dead *sou* (Rotuma), III 336: libations to gods (Samoa), III 7, 40: offered to god, in sickness (Tikopia), III 45: offered to gods, II 300 (Tikopia); 256, cf. 253 (Tonga): offered to gods before war (Fotuna), III 38: *see also* the kava *atua* of Paluki (Niue), I 348, 349
- origin: child of Atea (Marquesas), II 280: derived from Manu’a, Fiji or Tonga (Samoa), I 97–8: exchanged for fowls, etc. by “Tangaroans” (Samoa), I 98–9, 128: taken from “Tangaroans” by Losi (Samoa), I 101: *see also* Rotuma, I 359
- Kava people, *see under* Origin and migrations
- “King George” (Tonga), *see* Tubu, George
- Kings, *see* Chiefs, *and also under* place names
- Kingship: alternating succession, I 430–7, *see also under* Succession: annual, *see under* Easter Is., secular king; Rotuma, sacred king, *and* Rotuma, secular king: dual, in Polynesia, I 418–25: dual, possible evolution, I 425–8: dual, Samoan *alataua* connected with? I 82, 421–5, cf. III 38–9: dual, and titles *tui* and *sau* (*hau*), I 346, cf. 145: dual, *see also* Sacred and Secular kings *under* Easter Is., Fiji, Mangaia, Rotuma, Tikopia, Tonga, *and* Uvea, *also* Sacred and secular offices: triple division of rule, I 428–30, *see also under* Mangaia, Kingship
- Kivalu*, *see* Uvea, secular king
- Komono*, minor chiefs (Rarotonga), I 270, 272, II 394–5
- Koutu*, (Rarotonga): as council place, II 76, 490: enclosing *marae*, II 76, 490: membership denoting rank, II 76: owned by head chief, II 76: right to membership based on relationship? II 76: seats in, II 76, 490
- Kui the blind, goddess of Hades, II 274 (Hervey); 288 (Paumotu); 267 (Society); cf. Ontgong Java, II 301–2
- Lafai (Laifai), Samoa: ancestor of Tonu-maie’a f., I 75, 104, II 35: descendants of, subjected to father’s sister’s descendants, II 103–4: father’s sister keeping peace between Fune and, I 63, 67, II 103, 104, 333, 337–8: founding Sa-Fotu-Lafai, II 103: and Fune, ancestors of Savai’i people, I 63, 64–5, 67: Muliana f. descended from, II 31: stone walls attributed to, II 35, cf. III 251

INDEX

439

- Land: adopted son's rights *re* (Hervey), III 287, 292, 306–7, 379: adult son wrestling with father for, (Rarotonga) III 201, 221 *n.* 2, 378–9: beach land common (Rotuma), III 309, 312, *cf.* 308: boundaries, *see that title*: bush, common to family, etc. III 308?, 311? (Rotuma); 238–9?, 239–40, 255 (Samoa): bush, group and private property? (Mangareva), III 302, 303–4: common to group, etc. III 233–4; ? 318 (Easter Is.); 304, 305 (Niue); 308–9, 311–12 (Rotuma); 237, 238, 239 (Samoa); 272, 285 (Society); *cf.* III 314 (Fotuna); 315–17 (Funafuti), *and* 314 (Tokelau): cultivated by small groups in common? (Samoa), III 248–9: disputes *re*, (Rotuma) III 27: encroachments (Niue), II 493, III 304; (Rotuma), III 309; *cf.* Samoa, I 46: family head consulting family *re*, (Samoa) III 237–8: family head, suzerain, etc. of family land, III 127, 232, 290, 293, 294, 330 (Hervey); 229–30, 322 (Samoa): family property (inherited), III 293 (Aitutaki); 318, 319? (Easter Is.); 315?, 317? (Ellice); 296, 297, 298–9, 300 (Marquesas); 127, 290, 292, 293 (Rarotonga); 169, 308–9, 311–12 (Rotuma); 229, 238, 239, 240, 259–60, 261 (Samoa); 232, 272, 286 (Society); 340? (Tokelau); 268–9, 269–70 (Tonga): feudal tenure? (Society), III 276, 286–7; (Tonga), II 339, III 266; *cf.* Rarotonga, II 394, III 290: given to providers of human victims (Mangaia), III 288, 294: group head having family domain, III 364–5; (Samoa), II 11–12, III 229–30; (Society), III 231, 276; (Tokelau), III 314; (Tonga), I 132–3, 157, *cf.* III 266, 268–9: group head suzerain of group land, III 229, 364–5, 399; 290 (Rarotonga); 229–30, 239, *cf.* 255–6, 321 (Samoa); 231, 272, 276 (Society): group property (inherited), III 287–8, 292, 293 (Hervey); 296, 298–9 (Marquesas); 335, 360 (Niue), *see also* III 304, 305, land without heir re-assigned within group: held by group head for group, II 62, III 165, 229–33, 399; (Rarotonga), III 290; (Niue), III 233, 304, 335, 360; (Rotuma), III 233, 308, 312: hereditary property (Mangareva), III 302; (Marquesas), I 318, 324, III 295, 296, 298, 300; (Niue), III 233, 305; (Samoa), III 246, 249, 255, 263; (Society), II 390, III 231, 276, 286; (Tonga), III 230–1, 266, 268, 269: individual ownership of? III 314 (Fotuna); 315, 316, 317 (Funafuti); ? 302, ? 303–4 (Mangareva); 297, 298, 299 (Marquesas); 304, 305 (Niue); 292 (Rarotonga); ? 238–9, 243–4, 245–7, 255, 262, 263 (Samoa); 314 (Tokelau); ? 268 (Tonga): no individual ownership (Rotuma), III 233, 308, 312: individual ownership of crops, etc. (Rotuma), III 310–11, 312: individuals inheriting, III 314 (Fotuna); ? 315–16 (Funafuti); *cf.* Rotuma, III 310, 312, 313: individuals part-owners of family land (Rotuma), III 309, 310, 312: inherited by children, III 310 (Rotuma); 374 (Society): inherited by daughter (Funafuti), III 383: inherited by first-born, *see under* First-born: inherited by relations (Tonga), III 187: inherited by son (Funafuti), III 383; (Niue), II 206, III 381: laws *re*, well known (Rarotonga), II 490, III 22: lower classes enjoying usufruct (Society), II 391–2, III 277, *cf.* Marquesas, III 297: lower classes as landowners? III 276 (Society); 142 (Tonga): owned by chiefs (Funafuti), III 315; (Hervey), III 232, 288, 290, 293; (Mangareva)? III 301–2; (Marquesas), III 295, 296, 297, 298, 300; (Rotuma), III 307; (Society), III 231; (Tonga), II 37, III 230–1, 266, 267, 269: owned in different places by same persons (Funafuti), III 315: owned by the *fale-upolu* (Samoa), II 370: owned by family, outside district, III 318 (Easter Is.); 309 (Rotuma): owned by king (chief), III 233, *cf.* 301–2, 303, 360 (Mangareva); 232 (Marquesas); 273 (Society): owned by king, held by chiefs *in capite* (Society), III 277; (Tonga), I 134, III 230–1, 266, 268, *cf.* 269; *cf.* Rarotonga, III 290: owned by *matabule* (Tonga), II 37, 380, III 141, 267: owned by *mataiapo* (Rarotonga), I 269, II 394, III 127, 290, 293: owned by *mua* (Tonga), II 37, 381, III 141, 267: owned by *patu* (Niue), II 401: owned by priests (Society), II 420: owned by *raatira* (Marquesas), III 297; (Rarotonga), II 393–4, III 127; (Society), II 384, 385, 390, 391, 483, III 121, 231, 273, 276, 277, 286: not owned by all *ra'atira*? (Society), II 391: owned (or shared) by all (Marquesas), III 129; (Niue), III 233, 305; (Rotuma), II 403?; (Samoa), III 237, 243, 261, *cf.* II 126: owned by *tulafale* (Samoa), II 366, III 242: sea-rocks owned (Mangareva), III 302, 303: sub-chiefs independent in own districts, *see under* Government, etc.: tenancies, III 301–2? (Mangareva); 295? 296? 297? 301? (Marquesas); 290–1, 294 (Rarotonga); 309, 313 (Rotuma); 243, 247–8, 262–3 (Samoa); 276–7, 278, 286–7 (Society); 267, 270 (Tonga); 314 (Uvea): title by occupation, III 296, *cf.* 297, 300, 301 (Marquesas); 303 (Paumotu); 237, 240, 243, 260–1 (Samoa): titles and, inseparable, *see under* Titles, etc.: tribute due to chief for, *see under* Food offerings,

- tribute, etc.: trodden by king, taboo, III 86 (Marquesas); 80 (Society): widow owning, (Funafuti) III 383, cf. Paumotu, III 303, 304: wife not taking, to husband? (Hervey), III 287–8, 292, 306: “willed” by holder, III 169 (Funafuti); ? 169 (Marquesas); 169 (Niue); 169 (Rotuma); 166 (Samoa); 168 (Tahiti): *see also* Fishing rights
- alienation: by chief (Marquesas), III 296, 300–1: council meetings *re*, (Samoa), III 242, 243: by family head, III 305, 306 (Niue); 238 (Samoa): by family head, with consent of family, III 238, 239, 242, 243 (Samoa): family head consulting sister, etc. *re* (Samoa), II 104, III 243: family head not consulting family *re*, deposed (Samoa), III 242: foreign owners, adopted members of group, III 307; 376 (Tahiti); 267 (Tonga): “gift” of, III 296, 301 (Marquesas); 290 (Rarotonga); 246, 248, 263–4 (Samoa); 272, 275, 287 (Society); 267, 270 (Tonga): grants to whites, by king and chiefs (Tonga), III 270: group head consulting group *re*, (Samoa), III 261–2: by group head, illegal if without consent of group, III 309; ? 304–5, ? 306 (Niue); 319 (Rapa); ? 309–10, ? 313 (Rotuma); ? 277, ? 286 (Society): inalienable, III 287–8 (Hervey); 314 (Uvea): individual unable to bequeath right to plant to stranger (Rotuma), III 311, 312–13: inhabitants of alienated land retaining right of occupation, III 296, 297, 300–1 (Marquesas); 241, 301 *n.* 1 (Samoa): only within group, III 304, cf. 306–7 (Niue); ? 264 (Samoa): orators able to sell own land (Samoa), III 246–7: powers of groups *re*, (Samoa), III 262: powers of heads of groups *re*, (Samoa), III 243–5, 246–7: “purchase” of, III 242–3, 246, 262, 263 (Samoa): sale of (no permanent alienation), III 297?, 300? 301? (Marquesas); 304, 306 (Niue); 291, 294 (Rarotonga); 241–2, 243, 247, 262–4, cf. 261 (Samoa); 278, 286, cf. 277 (Society); 267, 270 (Tonga): of subject’s land by head chief, illegal, III 302 (Mangareva); 291, 294 (Rarotonga)
- of conquered party: going to relation siding with victors (Samoa), III 367: occupied by victors (Samoa), I 86: rarely taken (Society), III 272, cf. Teva, I 194–5: taken by victor? (Rotuma), I 359, cf. III 212, 309; (Society), I 176, 186, II 344, III 275–6: temporarily taken? (Tahiti), I 171; cf. Mangaia, III 288: victors marrying enemy women to gain possession of, I 289, III 276, cf. I 142–3; (Aitutaki), I 284, 286, 289–90, 292, III 293, cf. I 282–3, II 46; cf. Mangaia, II 139–40: *see also* confirmation of districts to chiefs after war (Mangaia), III 288–9, 293
- division of: in Aitutaki, by Maro-una, Ru, and Te-erui, *see under* Aitutaki: in Easter Is., by Hotumatua, *see under* Easter Is.: in Funafuti, by Touassa and Erivada, *see under* Funafuti: in Manga-eva, by Anua Motua, *see under* Manga-eva: in Rarotonga, by Karika and Tangiia, *see under those names*: in Samoa, by Ationgie, Lealali, Pili and Va’asiliifiti, *see under those names*: by chief (Marquesas), ? III 296, 300; (Tahiti), I 236: by chiefs and sub-chiefs, III 288, 293 (Hervey); 266, 269 (Tonga): family head allotting land for planting (Niue), III 233, 304, 305, 335; (Rotuma), III 233, 309, 312, 313, 339; (Samoa), II 445, III 238, cf. 240, 243–4, 258–9, 260, 261, 322: group head giving land to sub-head (Samoa), III 258, 322: group head re-allotting land without heir (Niue), III 304, 305: persons directing, (Samoa) III 257–9
- seizure of, etc.: chief displacing peasants (Tonga), III 266, 269–70: chief evicting tenant? (Mangaia), III 289, 294: by chiefs (Rotuma), III 309, cf. Society, III 272: commoner eating chief’s fish deprived of land (Paumotu), II 286: king giving offender’s land to another (Society), III 20: land of deposed chief going to relation, III 365; ? 318 (Easter Is.); 272, 275, 286 (Society): land of deposed chief taken by head chief (Society), III 273, 275–6: land reverting to king in case of litigation? (Society), III 272–3, 273–4, 285: thief’s land forfeited (Tikopia), III 30: *tuitonga* unable to displace chief, III 266
- tenure and control: III 229–319; 318–19 (Easter Is.); 315–18 (Ellice); 313–14 (Fotuna); 287–94 (Hervey); 295–301 (Marquesas); 301–4 (Paumotu); 319 (Penrhyn); 307–13 (Rotuma); 235–64 (Samoa); 270–87 (Society); 314 (Toku-lau); 265–70 (Tonga); 314 (Uvea)
- and trees: breadfruit connected with title to land (Rarotonga), III 291–2, 293: land-owner claiming chestnuts (Hervey), III 290: planting outside districts (Rotuma), I 362, III 307–8, 309, 311: separate ownership of, III 297, 298 (Marquesas); 319 (New Hebrides); 310–11, 312–13 (Rotuma); 279–80, 281–2, 284–5 (Society): separate ownership of, and matrilineal descent, III 282–5: tree-planting giving title to land? (Niue), III 304, 305
- Language of chiefs, *see* Chief’s language
- Lavaka* (Tonga), II 411, III 42
- Lealali (Alali): and his descendants, founders of Savai’i, I 59–60, 62–5, 66–8, 108: and division of land in Savai’i,

INDEX

441

- III 249–50, 258: Manu'an-Aana descent probable, I 60–2, 65–6, III 172: stone walls in Savai'i before time of, III 250: "will" of, and government of Upolu and Savai'i, I 61–2, III 172
- Le Fanonga**, *see* Fanonga
- Lending wives (Society):** to head chief, I 185, III 271: a reciprocal obligation, III 271: to *taio*? II 200, cf. Marquesas, III 158, 160, "friend" as husband of name-friend's wife: *taio*, "brother" of friend's sister, etc. II 200: *taio* not taking friend's sister or daughter, II 200: terms for the husbands? II 199: *see also* under Polyandry; *also* Marquesas, III 295, wives common
- Leulumoenga:** *aitu-fono* before great fono, II 82, 473–4, III 46–7, 110–11: and the *alataua*, I 83, 84 and n. 3, 85, 422–3: capital of Aana, I 43, 44, II 12: controlling Samoa, I 40, 43, 44: controlling Savai'i (Lealali), I 61–2, III 172: *fono* of all Aana held at, I 85, II 12–13, 14, 18, 34, 82, 448, 460–1: *fono* of all Samoa held at, I 40, II 448, 464: "greeting," II 465–6: governing Aana, I 43: and the *ituau*, I 85, 423: as *tumua*, I 44, cf. 45, 74, II 13, 448, 464, 465
- House of Nine: contention *re* spokesman rights, II 462: families composing, II 12–13: families of, related to *tuiaana*? II 15–17, III 172–5: families represented in, the local inhabitants, I 84–5, II 12, 15, 22: granting *tuiaana* title, II 14, 465, III 110–11 (cf. 46–7), 171, 172, 176: governing the village and all Aana, II 15: members, heads of the nine families, II 12, 15: mentioned in "greetings," II 465: Sausi and Salevaonono, I 61–2, II 12–13, III 172: sitting on stools, II 13, 459, 465
- Levirate (Samoa)**, II 125
- Libations:** of coconut-water (turtle feast), Paumotu, II 287: of kava, *see* Kava, libations, etc.
- Licentiousness**, connected with pigeon-catching feast (Samoa), II 236
- Life and death, chief having power of:** (Easter Is.), I 395, 401–2; (Hervey), III 358, cf. I 256–7; (Marquesas), III 130; (Samoa), III 102, 321; (Society), III 125; (Tonga), I 151, III 13, 117, 118, 119; (Uvea), I 370–1, III 28, 135: *see also* priests having power of life and death, Mangaia, II 426: *see also* under Cursing, Evil eye, Human sacrifice, Illness (cause of, curing of), Prayers, Peace, and War
- Lightning:** god represented by (Samoa), II 221: symbol of god, as war omen (Samoa), II 249
- Lilomaiaava f. (Samoa):** chief seats, II 19–20, 27, 28: chief's son living in mother's village, II 24: the Falelatai chiefs descended from, II 25: related to *tuiaana* family, II 19: *sa'oaualuma* name, II 99: Savai'i branches formed through marriage connections, II 27: Savai'i branches participating in title-granting, etc. II 27–8, 29: and Tonumaipe'a seat, II 32–3: Tuimaleali'ifano f. derived from, II 20, 24
- Lizard:** born of woman (Society), II 268: carving of, in house (Samoa), II 319: and eel, in clan burial cave (Mangaia), II 273: fear of, II 292 (Fotuna); 303 (New Hebrides): gods entering (Tonga), II 252: gods incarnate in, II 272? (Mangaia); 280, 283 (Marquesas); 288 (Rotuma); 221, 231, 232 (Samoa); 267–8? (Society); 258–9 (Tonga): gods of Tongan clan incarnate in, (Mangaia), II 272, 273, cf. Rarotonga, II 275–6: incised on arms of natives (New Hebrides), II 303: not killed (Tonga), II 253: as omen of death (Samoa), II 251: and Papara *marae* (Tahiti), II 322–3: pregnancy caused by, (Tonga) II 259, 260: sacred throughout island (Niue), II 291–292: spirit returning in, (Niue), II 307, 316: of Tangaroa (Aitutaki), II 273: "Tangaroan" gods associated with eel, snake and, I 220; (Hervey), II 273–5; (Samoa), I 104, II 231–5; (Society), I 220, II 267; (Tonga), II 253: tree derived from blood of, (Society), II 268–9: war omens from god incarnate in, (Samoa), II 249
- Longo (Rongo?),** not actually worshipped (Samoa), I 91
- Losi (Samoa):** attack on Tangaroa f., neutrality of sons of Pili, I 101: attack on Tangaroa f. (pre-"Tangaroans" v. "Tangaroans"), I 99–102, 122, 125: connection with underworld? I 99–100: not a god, I 99
- Lower classes:** II 394–5 (Hervey); 399–400 (Marquesas); 402 (Niue); 400 (Paumotu); 402–3 (Rotuma); 370–1 (Samoa); 384–5, 391 (Society); 379, 381 (Tonga); 403 (Uvea): common men as human victims (Hervey), II 395; (Mangareva), III 132; (Marquesas), II 399: retinue of chiefs, etc. including, II 391 (Society); 382 (Tonga): some common persons "sacred" (Society), II 391
- Loyalty Is.:** chief's language in, I 416–17: Polynesian element in, I 415
- Lu (Samoa):** ancestor of *tuiaua*, I 57, 96–7, 127: association with Atua, I 56, 57, 97, 127: conflict with Tangaroa f., I 57, 97, 122, 125, 127–8: descent from first man, I 96, 127: fowls of, and introduction of kava, I 98–9: fowls of, and name Samoa, I 56–7: marrying Tangaroa's daughter, I 57, 96, 97, 127: and Moa of Man'ua, I 57, 97, 99, 124:

- pre-Tangaroan god, I 96–7, 127: Ru identified with, I 96: Tangaroa as ancestor of, I 56, 57, 127: and Tangaroa, building canoe, I 57: *tui-aana* connected with, I 96, 97, 127, III 63–4: not worshipped, I 91
- Lufilufi: and the *alataua*, I 83, 84 and *n.* 3, 85, 422–3: capital of Atua, I 43, 44: as a fish, II 466–7: *fono* of all Atua held at, II 13, 448–9, 461: *fono*, privilege of Leota at, II 374–5, 459–60, III 144–5: governing Atua, I 44: “greeting,” II 467: and the *ituau*, I 85, II 466, 467: as *tumua*, I 44, cf. 45, 74, II 448–9, 464, 466
- House of Six: families composing, II 13: families of, related to *tuiatua*? II 17, III 175: granting *tuiatua* title, II 14, 466, III 171, 175, 176, cf. I 81: “greeted,” II 466, 467: members representatives of six families, II 13
- Maealiuaki (Mariwagui, etc.), Tonga: brother of Mumui, I 152: brother of Tubu, I 152, 433: father-in-law of *tuitonga*, I 152, cf. 153: relationship of Finau to, I 152, 169: relative powers of *tuitonga* and, I 152–3: and titles of *tuihaatakalaia*, etc. I 145, 152, 433
- “Magic” and “religion,” II 405–6, cf. 17
- Maggots, man evolving from (pre-“Tangaroans”), Samoa, I 90 and *n.* 5, 100, 123–4, 125–6, 129, 138, 139, cf. Tonga, I 136–42, III 65
- Mahoo, *see under* Servants
- Makea chiefs, *see* Karika group, etc.
- Malie, Samoa: ancient capital of Tuamasanga, I 78–9, II 11–12, cf. I 44, III 113–14, *see also* Afenga
- House of Seven: families composing, II 13: granting Malietoa title, *see under* Malietoa title: the representatives of seven families, II 13: withdrawing Malietoa title, III 208
- Malietoa chiefs: *ali'ipa'ia*, II 357–8, III 73, 74: and cannibalism, III 346: connection with Fe'e, I 95, 100, 127, III 64: “death”-mat given to “sister”-family at funeral of M. Laupepa, II 95–6: descent from Pili, III 64: descent from Tangaroa, III 64: first M. the first suzerain of Tuamasanga, I 74: genealogies referred to, III 64, 388, cf. I 61: “greeted” at *fono*, II 469: head chiefs of Tuamasanga, I 45, II 11: kava chewers, sister's descendants, II 99: living at Malie, I 77, 79, II 11–12, 468, III 113–14: Manono chiefs related to, II 20: Mata'afa chiefs related to, III 145: military service due to, II 330: names of orators of, and pigeons, II 236: and origin of Ngatoaitete, etc. titles, I 75–6: and owl ancestor-spirit, II 304, 308: pre-Tangaroans, I 88, 92, 125, cf. I 105–6: and rebel party, III 11–12: rising to importance during Tongan war, I 60, 65–6, 73–4, 92–3: *sa'oaualuma* name, II 98, 99: servant of, keeping fire burning, II 375–6: succession, III 388, 392: and the *tafa'ifa* office, I 76–7, III 176–7: Tuimaleali'ifano f. connected with, II 20: Vainupo exchanging name with Williams, III 157: younger brothers councillors of first Malietoa, I 74, III 145: war allies, *ainga* villages, II 334–5
- title: given to Savea, I 72, 73, III 145: granted by House of Seven (and branches abroad), II 14, 17, 22, 29, III 171, 175, 176: not necessary to *tafa'ifa*, I 45, 74: origin, I 60, 72–3: withdrawn by granters, III 208
- Malo party, etc. I 425, cf. 427–8; (Easter Is.), I 386, 409; (Fotuna), I 362–6, 421; (Rotuma), I 360–1; (Samoa), I 85–7; (Uvea), I 370, 371, III 205
- Man, origin of: derived from stones, rocks, etc. (Bukabuka), I 382; (Samoa), I 48, 57, cf. genealogies, I 47–8, 68, III 63; (Tokelau), I 373, III 71; *see also* Tonga, II 181: derived from *ti* plant, by Huanaki (Niue), I 349: divine descent of “Tangaroans” (Samoa), I 90, 123–4, 138, 139, cf. 48–9, *see also* Tonga, I 136–42, III 65–6: first inhabitants, *see under* place names: first man, son of eel by woman (Marquesas), II 280–1: first man, Tiki, I 302; (Paumotu), I 339, II 205, III 71: pre-“Tangaroans” evolved from creeper, etc. (Samoa), I 90 and *n.* 5, 100, 123–4, 125–6, 129, 138, 139, *see also* Tonga, I 136–42, III 65
- Mana: given by Tangaroa to son of *tuimanu'a* (Samoa), III 215, 219: possessed by king of Hao (Paumotu), I 336–7, III 87, 132: *senga* bird coveted on account of, (Samoa), I 99: and Tinomana name (Rarotonga), I 275: transmitted by dying father to son? (Samoa, Society), III 223–4
- Manahune, (*manahua*, etc.), I 22–3; *see also under* Lower classes (Society)
- Mangaia: battles fought in, I 252–3, 259–62: clans, I 258–60, 261, II 42–4, 138, *see also* Ngariki clan *below*, Aitu clan, and Tongan clan: clans each having own gods, etc. I 258, II 43, 138, 345–6: district chiefs subject to head chiefs, I 262–3: districts (and god's skeleton), I 251–2, cf. 262: name, meaning of, I 250: Ngariki chiefs, descent from Rongo's sons, I 252, cf. 258–9, II 271, III 67: Ngariki clan, I 258, II 42: Ngariki clan, and battle list, I 261, 262: Ngariki clan, branches, I 258–9, cf. 261,

INDEX

443

- II 42, 138: Ngariki clan, first inhabitants, I 258, 262, II 42, 138, III 67: Ngariki clan, god Rongo, II 347, cf. 348 *n.* I, *see also* Mоторо, I 259, II 271: Rangi, etc. dragging up island of, I 252: state regarded as (assembly) house, I 251
- kingship: triple kingship, I 252–8, 428–9, III 67, 329; cf. Hervey, I 429, III 329, Samoa, I 429, III 321, Tonga, I 429, III 324–5: *see also* Food, Rulers of
- sacred kings: beating drum of peace, I 256, 257, 419, II 348, III 44, 67, 288: blood not shed without consent of, I 256, 257, 419, II 347–8, cf. I 165: council summoned by, I 263, II 489, III 126: not dancing, I 256: divine descent, I 258, III 67, *see also* Ngariki chiefs *under* Mangaia: fastening *maro* on warriors, I 251: not fighting, I 256: high priests of Rongo, I 165, 255, 256, 419, II 347–8, III 35: human sacrifice offered by, I 256, 257, III 288: inaugurated by secular king, I 255–6: inauguration of, III 217: installing secular king, I 256, 257, 419, III 44, 202: land owned by, III 358: lists referred to, I 254, III 67: living at Keia, I 254: might be slain, I 16: naming children, III 151: office hereditary, I 255–6, 258, 419, III 67, 377, 389, cf. 391–2: power, I 256–7, 428: prayers of, protecting island, I 254, 255, 419: praying during war, I 422: provisioning of, III 358: Rangi the first sacred king, I 252, 254, 255: secular office originally held by, I 254–5, 419, III 67, cf. I 426: not tattooed, I 256, III 84
- — — (secondary line): list referred to, I 254: living at O-Rongo, I 254, cf. 255: prayers of, protecting island, I 254, 255, 419: relationship to higher line, I 256, 258: and Rulers of Food, I 255: sanctity terminating with war, I 256: secular king doing homage to, I 256: Tui appointed by Rangi, I 255: Tui connected with Rarotonga, I 258
- secular kings: conquering chief elected, I 252, 419, 377, 389–90: inaugurated by sacred king, I 256, 257, 419, III 44, 202: inauguration of, I 253, 256, 257, 419, III 44, 202, 288–9: installing sacred king, I 255–6: list referred to, I 252–3: might be of any clan, I 258: obeying sacred king, I 256: office terminating with war, I 253, 256: Rangi, first secular king, I 253: ruling over all Mangaia, I 252–3: sun associated with, III 84
- Mangareva (Paumotu): I 325–6: capital Angauru (Rikitea), I 327, 328, 329, 334, 335: created by Tangaroa, etc. I 339: land divided by Anua Motua, I 327–8, 331–2, II 49, III 169, 304: and Melanesia, I 335: villages, I 335
- kings: abdicating after initiation of son? III 204, 217–18, 222, cf. 380, 391: Anua Motua, *see that name*: Apeiti crushing Taku, I 328–9, 334: Apeiti, mentioned in “Tangaroa” list, I 328: Apeiti peopling Paumotu, I 329, 331: attendants, etc. II 400: commanders-in-chief? III 132, 204: divine descent, III 70–1: divinity of, III 37, 87, 132: dual kingship, I 329–30, 431, III 394: feasts appointed by, III 132: and food offerings, III 360: and food supply, III 334–5: inauguration, I 329, 330, 333: labour due to, III 132, 334, 360: land controlled by, I 331, III 301–2, 303, 304: Mateoa’s son ordained priest, III 334–5, cf. II 436: office, and collateral succession, II 380, 391: office hereditary, I 326, III 204, 380, 391: one line descended from Atea, I 326, 327, 329, 330, 332–3, III 70–1: one line descended from Tangaroa, I 326, 328, 329, 330, 332–3, III 71: peace and war made by, III 132: power, III 131–3, 334, 360: suzerainty over whole cluster, I 328, 331: suzerainty precarious, I 334, II 352: and Taku, I 327, 328–9, 330, 331, 333, 334, II 352: Taratahi descended from Atea, I 327, cf. 326, 332–3: Taratahi fleeing from Anua Motua, I 327, 331: Taravai chiefs related to, I 328, 334, cf. 335, II 325: Taravai people, allies of, I 328, 334–5, cf. II 352: tyrants deposed or killed, III 132, 212, 302, 360: the White and Black kings, I 329–30, 333, 335: women succeeding, III 380–1
- Manihiki (Humphrey Is.): connection with Penrhyn islanders, etc. I 381: first inhabitants Rarotongans, I 381: king as high priest, III 38: question of kingship in, I 382
- Mannemanne (Society): ally of Pomare II against Pomare I, I 205: appointing Pomare II his heir in Ra’iatea, I 216: death, I 206: districts in Tahiti under, I 205–6: high priest of Ra’iatea, I 223: high priest in Tahiti, I 205, 223, III 356 *n.* 5: a Ra’iatean chief, I 205, 216, III 356 *and n.* 5: related to Pomare I, I 205: same person as Moure, I 216: sharing gifts with followers, III 356
- Manono islanders (Samoa): chiefs connected with *tuimamua* and “Tangaroans,” II 20: chiefs related to Malietoa chiefs, II 20: connection with Pili, I 59: prowess on sea, II 464: taking part in granting of Malietoa title, II 14, 17, cf. 22, 29
- Manu’a: and the *alatau*, I 83: ancient dominance of, I 103, 106–7, 119–20: and Atiu, I 294, 298: capital, rivalry between Tau and Fitiuta, *see under*

- Tau: capital, the seat of the king, II 11, 21: council of chiefs in, II 444, III 113, 116, 170: created first, I 89–90, 123, 125: the dead eaten in, I 103: no districts in, I 42: and Fiji, I 99, 102–4, 107, 115, 117, 119–21, 122, 128–9, III 346: and Fiji, fished up by Hikuleo (Tonga), I 105, 124, 126: Fiji, Savai'i, Tonga and, connected in myths, I 117, 128–9: *fono* of, II 13, 84–5, 449, 461: *fono*, and (related) guests, II 84–5: greeting for, II 469: and the *ituau*, I 83: origin of name, I 56: and Rarotonga, I 38, 103, 266–7, 280, cf. 221, 230–2: Samoa peopled by, I 107, cf. 56: and Savai'i, *see under* Savai'i: Savai'ian-Manu'an gods and Tonga, I 115–17: a separate kingdom (not under *tafa'ifa*), I 40, 45, 74, 112, 121, 129, II 358, 447, 464: separate origin of Manu'ans ("Tangaroans"), I 102–3, 121, 129: settled before rest of group, I 88, 102–3, cf. 89–90: and Society Is. I 103, 221, 230, 231–2: Tangaroa founding constitution of, I 55, 89, 122–3: Tangaroa, god of "Tangaroans" and, I 118–30: Tangaroa, etc. and Fitiuta, I 49–50, cf. 52, 53, 55–6, 120–1: Tangaroa, etc. living in, I 49, 51, 89, 90, 101: Tangaroan descent of Manu'ans and Savai'ians, I 49, 90, 123–4, 138, 139, *see also* Tonga, I 136–42, III 65–6: "Tangaroans" specially associated with, I 88, 111, 119–21, 123–5 (Samoa); 221, 231 (Society): no pre-Tangaroans in? I 111, 125: and Tonga, I 102–6, 119–20, 121–2, 123–4, 126, 128–9, 288: "Tongans" not subjecting, etc. I 73, 110, 111, cf. 108, 121, 125, 129: and Upolu, *see under* Upolu
- Marae*: bats in, sacred (Tonga), II 255, 261: bird, etc. incarnations owning, (Society), II 262: birds in, sacred (Society), II 261: built on inauguration of chiefs (Society), II 68: burial near, II 60: (Paumotu), I 335; (Tonga), II 476, 477; *see also* Society, II 72, stone from *marae* set on grave of prince: definition of term, II 60: feasts and ceremonies held at, II 77 (Rarotonga); 60, 63, 65 (Society); *see also* turtle feasts, II 294–5, 310 (Penrhyn); 286–7, 310 (Paumotu); 269, 310 (Society): great *marae* surrounded by minor *marae* (Society), II 65, cf. the *koutu*, Rarotonga, II 76, 490: with images of animals, etc. (Society), II 322–3: *mahoo* not entering (Society), II 393: marriage ceremonies held in (Tahiti), I 243–4: with platforms, seats, etc., (Fiji), II 81; (Niue), II 80; (Rarotonga), II 77–8, III 51–2; (Society), I 214–15, II 70–1: with pyramid (Society), I 174, II 70: road through (Samoa), II 452, 453, 456, 458: stone structures, II 60: walled, I 21; (Society), II 67; cf. Rarotonga, II 77: for women, II 284–5, 286 (Paumotu); 425 (Society): women not entering, II 432 (Marquesas); 425 (Society): women and men at certain *marae* (Society), II 425: *see also* Altars
- Marae*, connection with council place: II 60, 81–2, 441: 76, 490 (Rarotonga); 81 (Tokelau): cleared before *fono* (Samoa), II 458: gods holding council meeting on *malae* (Samoa), II 83: gods imparting will to orator-chiefs in *faletele*, (Samoa), II 82: intercourse established with gods by sleeping on *malae* (Samoa), II 82–3, cf. orator "sleeping" on *malae* at *fono*, II 460, III 46: Makea chief holding council at *marae*? (Rarotonga), III 127–8, cf. II 77–9, 490: Teva councils at Farepua, II 486, III 162–3
- human sacrifice at: (Fiji), II 81; (Hervey), I 252, II 77, cf. III 289; (Marquesas), I 311, III 37; (Society), I 193, 207, 212, 219, 220, 223, II 73: and question of rank (Tahiti), II 65, 67, cf. Marquesas, I 311, chief section of clan alone having human sacrifice *marae*: victim exposed in minor *marae* sent on to great *marae* (Society), I 223, 247, cf. Ra'iatea, I 212, 219: victims offered to Oro, sent on to Tane *marae* (Tahiti), I 247
- as record of rank (Society): II 61–2, 71, 75, cf. Rarotongian *koutu*, II 76: chief's rank depending on age of *marae*, II 65: persons tracing back to Farepua, *ari'i*, II 40: rank of ownership not lost by defeated chief, II 66: relation-visitor seated according to rank (Tahiti), II 66: seats indicating rank of owners, II 64, 66, 67, 70, cf. 73–4: *see also under* Seating in assembly house, etc.
- seats: for chiefs (Fiji), II 81; (Marquesas), II 79; (Society), I 214–15, II 70–1: for chiefs (heads of families), in *koutu*, II 76, 490: enclosure entered by chiefs and priests (Society), II 484, III 124: enclosure, persons outside (Society), II 73–4: head chief in seat of honour (Society), II 64–5, 70, 74, 420, cf. 73, *see also* Rarotonga, II 490: hereditary, (Rarotonga), II 76, 78, III 51–2; (Society), II 66, 67–8, 75: for king and chiefs, (Niue) II 80, 494; (Rarotonga), II 77–8, III 51–2: of members of council? (Tokelau), II 81: for members of family, II 76? (Rarotonga); 70, 71, 72, cf. 74 (Society): right to, based on kinship, *see under Marae*, as social centre: seat of *tuitonga* *fefine* in *fiatoka* of *tuitonga*, II 196: stone connected with inauguration of king (Mangareva), I

INDEX

445

- 329, 333; (Niue), II 80; (Rarotonga), II 77, III 217; (Society), II 77 *n.* 5: *see also* Seating, etc. and Seats of chiefs, etc.
- (as social centre): II 60–86; 76–9 (Hervey); ? 79 (Marquesas); ? 80 (Niue); 79–80 (Paumotu); 63–75 (Society); 81? (Tokelau); cf. Samoa, II 82–6 (*details under* Seating, etc.): assemblies for maintaining relations with branches abroad (Society), II 64: belonging to head chief (head of group), Society, II 60, 61, 62, 64, 65, 66, 68, 73, 420, 421; cf. Rarotonga, II 76: belonging to head of family (Tahiti), II 68: chiefs having several *marae*, etc. (Society), II 69–70, 74: chiefs inaugurated in, *see under* Inauguration: chieftainship connected with ownership of, (Paumotu), I 336, II 79–80; (Society), I 213? 226? 236, II 65, 66, 67, 68–70, 73, 74, 75, III 279; *see also* Hervey, II 62–3: each chief (and sub-chief) having own *marae* (Rarotonga), II 78–9, III 128; (Society), I 236, II 63–4, 65, 67: of families (Society), I 243, cf. III 43: founded with stone from parent *marae* (Society), I 173, 225, 226, 230, 231, II 60–1, 65, 68, 71–2, 74–5; cf. Paumotu, II 80: god worshipped in, ancestor of head chief (Society), II 64, 420: of group families, under group head (Society), II 66, 67, 75: head chief living near (Fotuna), I 364–5; (Rarotonga), II 62, 77; (Samoa) II 451; (Society), I 219: land, etc. going with *marae* (Society), II 65, cf. 67, 73: member of hostile branch visiting parent *marae* (Society), II 64: members of distant branches admitted, if proving kinship (Society), II 66, 67–8, 75, cf. Hervey, II 79, exile's descendant recognized through knowledge of prayers: members of *malae* bound to defend each other (Samoa), II 85–6: natives assembling in tribes (Society), II 71: parent and branch *marae*, II 61–3; (Rarotonga), II 78–9; (Society), I 226, II 65, 67: representative of the family (Society), II 65, 67: right of entry, etc. based on kinship (Society), I 196, 224 *n.* 2, II 60, 63, 64, 72–3; cf. Rarotonga, II 76, 78, and Samoa, II 84–5: right of entry retained by branches abroad (Society), II 64: stones of vengeance at (Tahiti), II 345: “stranger” becoming head of related *marae*, etc. (Society), II 70: of sub-chiefs, consecrated by head chief (Society), II 68–9: as title-deed or ancestor-table, II 60–3; 62, 78–9 (Hervey); 80 (Paumotu); 65–6, 67–8, 71, 72, 75 (Society): as title-deed, importance of genealogies (Society), II 66, 67–8: titles connected with, *see under* Titles
- taboo to strangers: (Society), II 73, cf. Samoa, II 84–5, 459: claimants not proving right to enter, killed (Society), II 66, 68: persons not full clansmen not entering enclosure (Society), II 64: Pomare unable to enter stranger *marae*, I 196, II 72: road in front of *fono* house taboo to strangers (Samoa), II 458: stranger entering killed (Society), II 71, cf. 66–7
- at Atia-te-Varinga-nui, with stone-enclosure, I 21
- (Aitutaki): built by Ru, I 282, II 62: built by Ruatapu, I 283
- (Atiu), Taputapuata, connected with Ra'iatea *marae*, I 235–6
- of Attahuru (Paea), Tahiti: centre of Oro cult (Maraetaata), I 205, *n.* 3, 206, 222, 223, 224 *n.* 2, 233: great ceremonies held at (after seizure of *maro-ura*), I 193, 223–4: human sacrifice at, I 193, 207: human victims of lesser *marae* finally sent to (right lost to Tautira), I 223: Papara *maro-ura* brought to, I 193, 194, 200, 203, cf. 201: Papara *maro-ura* carried off from, I 201, 202: not Pomare's own *marae*, I 224 *n.* 2: Pomare I wearing *maro* at, I 194, 195, II 72–3, cf. I 224 *n.* 2, II 361: Ra'iatean origin of worshippers at, I 233–4, II 40–1: removal of image of Oro from, I 207–8, 223–4, 228, 238, 243, II 266, 484, III 34: Tangaroa formerly worshipped at? I 233
- (Borabora), Farerua, Rotuma connection, II 71–2
- — Vaiotaa: founded by son of Ra'iatean king, I 213, 226: named after ancestral *marae* in Ra'iatea, I 226: an Oro *marae*, I 226: *see also* Tautira *marae below*
- of Eimeo: with pyramid, seats, etc. II 70: sending victims to Ra'iatea, I 212
- (Fiji, Bau), with altar and seats, II 81
- (Fotuna), I 364, 365
- (Huahine): dedicated to dog, II 270: dedicated to lizard, II 268: dedicated to sharks (Tane cult?), I 239, II 264, 266
- — Mata'i-rea: dedicated to Tane, I 238–9: with platform, I 214–15, cf. I 239, II 70–1: Tane attended by eight district-gods at, I 214–15, 239, II 41: *see also* I 247, Tane's *marae* retaining pre-eminence
- — of Oro, II 72
- (Mangaia): of Rongo, I 252, 255: of Tane, dedicated by Tahitian clan, I 240: of Tane, enemy skulls at, I 260: of Tongan clan, II 272 *n.* 2, cf. 43
- (Mangareva): of Anua Motua dynasty, dedicated to Tangaroa? I 333: of Taravai, burial place of kings, I 335:

- of Taravai, hair of king cut at, I 335 *and* n. 4: of Tu, II 80
- in Marquesas (Nukuhiva), of Teii group, I 311
- in Niue, at Paluki? I 348–9, cf. II 80
- of Papara (Tahiti): dedicated to new god Oro, I 228–9: original *marae* in Amo, I 174, cf. 184: of Teva, human sacrifice at, II 73
- — Mahaiatea, title connected with, II 69
- — Mataoa: founded with stone from Farepua, I 173, II 71: origin, I 172–3: stone pyramid built for Purea's son at, I 174, cf. 187, 193 *and* n. 7, II 63
- — Taputuarai: connection with lizard, II 322–3: the original *marae*, I 225: not an Oro *marae*? I 226: title connected with, II 69: *see also* Tooarai *and* Tuarai *below*
- — Tooarai: founded with stone from Taputuarai, II 71: title connected with, II 69
- — Tuarai: built in time of Pomare I, I 225: dedication to Oro not permitted by natives, I 225–6: founded with stone from Taputuarai, I 225, 226
- of Pare Arue, Tahiti: founded with stone from Ra'iatea *marae*, II 71: *maro-ura* from Attahuru brought to, I 201–202
- of Punaauia (Tahiti): oldest *marae* after Farepua, I 172, 185: origin, I 172
- (Ra'iatea), at Opoa: *and areoi* society, I 219: built by royal family descended from gods, I 219: centre of widespread cult, I 219: centre of Oro worship in modern times, I 219, 221: consecrated to Oro by Hiro, I 213, 220, 226, cf. II 62–3: human sacrifice to Oro at, I 220: human victims sent from other islands to, I 212, 219: *and* origin of man, I 211–12, 220: Pomare I having seat in, II 72: Rarotongans sending drum to Oro at, I 236: seat of the gods, I 219: skulls of enemies at, I 220: Tangaroa giving *marae* to Oro, I 219–20, cf. 248: Tangaroa originally god of, I 219, 221, 248, II 63 n. 1, cf. 211–12, 220: Taputapuatea a name of, I 230, 235: *and* Tu-te-rangiatea, I 218–19, II 62: Vai'otaha a name of, I 226: *see also* connection with *marae* of Atiu, Attahuru, Borabora, Eimeo, Pare Arue, Tautira, Vaiari (Tahiti)
- (Rarotonga): at Avarua, built by Karika, I 266, II 62: Rangi Manuka, family *marae* of Karika clan, I 266: of Tokerau, built by Karika, I 266
- — Araitetonga: a Karika *marae*, I 266, 274, II 62, 77: king inaugurated in, II 428: seats and altar, etc. II 77–8, III 51–2: stone wall once enclosing? II 77: Tangia originally owning, II 77
- (Tahaa), passing from Tane to Oro, I 246
- (Takaroa, Paumotu), owned by Tangihia, II 79–80
- of Tautira (Tahiti): date of origin, I 226: founded with stone from Borabora *marae*, I 226, II 71: human victims sent to, after arrival of Oro image, I 223: named Vaiotaha, I 226: an Oro *marae*, I 222: an Oro *marae* in Teva district, I 226, 227: Pomare's son possessing (as Vehiatua), I 228: *and* Ra'iatea, I 226–7, 227–8, 230, 231–2: removal of image of Oro to, I 207–8, 223–4, 228, 238, II 266: a Tangaroa *marae* originally? I 227, 228: Vehiatua owner of, I 228
- of Vaiari, Farepua (Tahiti): chiefs' council held near, II 486, III 162–3: decorated with red feathers, I 174, 229: higher title of Vaiari chief connected with, I 229, II 69, III 162, cf. I 230, 232, II 70: oldest Teva *marae*, I 172, 173, 174, 185, 229–30, II 40: *see also marae* of Papara, Mataoa
- — Tahiti: founded with stone from Ra'iatean *marae*, I 230, 231, II 71, cf. I 227: lesser title of Teva chief connected with, I 229, II 69, III 162, cf. I 230, 232, II 70: *and* Tangaroa–Oro connection, I 230, 232, cf. 222
- Mareewagee, Mariwagui, *see* Maealiuaki
- Maro, fastened on warriors before war, by sacred king (Mangaia), I 251
- Maro-tea (Tahiti), inferior to *maro-ura*, I 195 n. 1: origin of Papara belt, I 172–3: Papara chief wearing, I 173, 188, 192 n. 8, 195: *see also* white *maro* royal insignia in Borabora, I 213: *and* high priest wearing white *maro* (Society), II 421
- Maro-una (Aitutaki): coming from Rarotonga, I 284, 286, 291: descendant of, marrying descendant of Taruia, I 286, 287, 288, 289, 291–2, 293: descendants by Ru woman, the present *ariki* of Aitutaki, I 286, 290, 291–2: descent from Ru, I 287: descent from Ruatapu, I 287, 289, 291, 293, II 46: land divided by, I 286, 290, II 46, III 293: routing Aitu clan *and* becoming king, I 284, 286, 291, 292–3: warriors of, marrying land-owning Ru women, I 284, 286, 289–90, 292, II 46, III 293
- Maro-ura (Society Is.): *ari'i maro-ura* as highest title, II 360–1: Borabora chief wearing, II 361: chief invested with, fed, III 83: connection with god (Tahiti), I 193: *and* human sacrifice rights (Tahiti), I 193: investiture with, part of inauguration (Tahiti), I 223, cf. Mangaia, III 217: Papara chief not entitled to wear (Tahiti), I 185, 188, 192 n. 8, 200, II 361: of Papara, in-

INDEX

447

- vestiture of Pūrea's son, etc. I 188, 192–5: of Papara, new belt made with Wallis' pennant, I 200–1: of Papara, taken to Attahuru (Paea), I 193, 194, 200, 203, cf. 201: of Papara, taken to Pare by Pomare, I 201, 202: of Papara, worn by Pomare I, I 194, 195, II 72–3, cf. I 224 n. 2, II 361: Pūnaauia chief wearing (Tahiti), I 185, 188, II 361: of Pūnaauia, origin (Tahiti), I 172: Ra'iatea chief wearing, I 188, II 361: of Ra'iatea, claim of Pomare I to, I 196: royal insignia (Ra'iatea), I 213; (Tahiti), I 172, 193, 201, 203, cf. II 361: Vaiari chief wearing (Tahiti), I 185, 188, 200, II 361: Vaiari chief wearing, in connection with Maheanu title, I 229: worn at great feasts, I 188: worn by head chiefs, II 361
- Marquesas: connection with Rarotonga? I 235, 264: islands other than Nukuhiva, I 315–16: and Melanesia, I 300–3: N.W. and S.E. groups, I 300: the two groups, battle between mountains of, I 305–6: the two groups, eels of, I 306: the two groups, linguistic differences, I 303–4, 305, II 46: the two groups, tattooing differences, I 304–5: world created by Tiki? I 302: *see also* Nukuhiva
- kings, etc.: no dual kingship, I 419–20: in Fatuhiva, I 316, 323: in Huapu Is. I 315, 320, 322, 323: in Tahuata Is. I 316, 318, 320, 322, 323; *see also* Nukuhiva, kings
- Marriage, etc.: bridal couple, food offering to, (Society), III 357: bride's loin mat given to "father's sister," etc. (Samoa), II 161, 171, 173–4: ceremonies performed in *marae* (Tahiti), I 243–4: chiefs acting as priests at, (Rotuma) III 44: consent of head of family necessary (Easter Is.), I 401, cf. Society, II 138: dowry, *see that title*: female relations cutting heads at wedding (Society), II 116: girls marrying earlier than boys, I 14: marriage of *taupou* politically important, II 331: rank of chief's bride important, II 157, 331 (Samoa); ? 117 (Tahiti): rank of spouses, necessity for equality (Society), II 114–16, cf. 137: restrictions *re, see* Exogamy, etc., *and also under relationship names*: taboo to image-bearer (Society), III 81: wooing done by bride's family, II 140 (Marquesas); 136 (Tonga): young chiefs (not invested) marrying daughters of commoners (Samoa), II 157, cf. 158: young chiefs not marrying early, I 15; (Easter Is.), III 206
- Mata'afa title (Samoa): granted by orators, "brothers" of chief, III 145: passing to related family but still granted by Faleata, II 28–30, cf. III 175
- Matabule, see under* Councillors (Tonga)
- Mataiapo, see under* Councillors (Rarotonga)
- Matariki, creating Bukabuka, etc. I 383
- Mat-symbol of family god (Tonga), II 252
- Mats (fine mats), Samoa: bride's dowry consisting of, II 126, 155: brought to hosts by visitors (Samoa), III 324: contributed to chief by orators, etc. III 247, 263, 345–6, cf. 185–6: "death"-mats, first mat for "sister" of heir to title, II 94–5, 97–8, 100, 110–11, cf. 167, 169, 170–1: "death"-mats, given to "sister"-family by "brother"-family, II 95–6: "death"-mats, handed to "servants" on death of chief, II 94: given to sister's descendants by brother's descendants, II 96–8, 167–8: named, II 95: orator-chiefs taking orator names in order to receive, II 367, 368–9: orators electing candidate commanding most mats, III 179–80: received by orators for services to chief, II 372, III 345: received by orators at title-granting, II 367–8, 374, III 145, 179, 180, 181, 184, 185: special mat of bride's dowry due to "sister's son" of bridegroom's father, II 155–6, 167, 168, 174, cf. 170–1: superior claim of father's sister's son *re*, II 156, 168: used as currency, III 185, 247
- Matshiktshike, fishing up world (New Hebrides), II 303
- Mau'i (Polynesia): ancient volcano god, I 91, 95 *and n.* 1, 100, 126, 301–2, 303: discovering fire, I 302: fishing up islands, I 302: raising skies, I 302, II 232: Tiki connected with, I 91, 100, 102, 302, II 232 n. 3
- (Mangaia), getting fire, II 278
- (Marquesas), the god of the *areoi* feasts, I 302
- (Niue): ancestor of Tikitiki, II 206: coming to Paluki from sky, I 349
- (Paumotu): changing Rii into dog, II 287: connected with eel-Hina myth, II 284: fishing up Tahiti, I 173
- (Mafui'e), Samoa: ally of Losi against Tangaroans, I 99, 100: attributes transferred to later dominant gods, I 95, 126, 142: not worshipped, I 91
- (Society), separating sky from earth, I 184
- (Tonga): ancestor of *tuitonga*, I 142, III 65: fishing up islands, I 104–6, 124, 129, 141, 142: not worshipped, I 91
- Mauke: and Atiu, islanders of common descent, I 294, 297: first inhabitant, I 250, 299, cf. 294, 297: kings, Tararo, representative of Rongomatane of Atiu, I 298–9: kings, Tararo's descent from Rata, etc. I 298–9, III 69: and Mitiaro, dominated by Atiu kings, I 295, 296,

- 299, cf. 298: and Ruatapu, I 283, 285, 298–9, III 69: two hostile groups in, I 299: villages, I 299
- Mautara family (Mangaia): branch of the Ngariki, I 258, II 42: connected with Rangi, I 259: eating the other Ngariki septs, I 259: hereditary districts of, I 258, II 42: and human sacrifice, III 288: origin of name, I 259: power, I 259, cf. II 426: priests of Mоторо, I 257, 259: Tiaio adopted as god by, in place of Tane, I 259, II 272: *see also* list of battles, I 261
- Mavaenga f. (Samoa): branch at Asau, and the Tonumaip'e'a, II 34–6: branch at Faleasi'u related to Satuala f. there, II 23, 24: branch at Sataua related to Tonumaip'e'a there, II 34: branch of *tuiaana* line, II 18, 23, 34, 35, 465, III 112: chief seats, II 19, 23, 34: founded by *tuiaana* Tamesese, II 19: and privy council of *tuiaana*, III 112–13
- Melanesia: and Easter Is. I 301, 401: and Marquesas, I 300–3: and migrant groups, I 2, 4, 5–9
- Menstruation (first): hair given to girl at, (Marquesas), II 203: importance of father's sister at rites at, (Tonga), II 183: importance of mother's brother at rites at, (Marquesas), II 203
- Messengers: announcing decrees of council? (Marquesas), II 491: coconut leaves delivered by, (Society), II 487: envoy of peace, "sister's son" of enemy, II 176 (Fiji); 157, 176 (Samoa), *see also* chief's "jester" as messenger, II 372: envoys of peace, persons related to opponents (Marquesas), II 350: herald proclaiming infant chief (Society), III 195–6: the *iatoai* (*fono* and war), Society, II 387, 388, 487: informing village-districts of topic of discussion (Samoa), II 449: official messengers for each village-district (Samoa), I 46: orators, and orator-chiefs (*fono*), Samoa, II 449: the *orero* calling people to *marae* (Society), II 424–5: sent direct to each place in Aana (Samoa), II 449–50, 465: sent by district chiefs to followers (Society), II 487, III 122, cf. II 342, 488: sent by head chief to district chiefs (Society), II 342, 487–8, III 122, cf. I 192–3: sent to important village-districts (Samoa), II 449–50: sent ten times to Leota (Samoa), II 374–5: of Teva clan, number, etc. (Society), II 487–8: of war, carrying spears, etc. (Samoa), II 330: of war, sent to allied districts also (Samoa), II 331
- Middle classes: II 393–5 (Hervey); 397–8 (Marquesas); 400–1 (Paumotu); 402–3 (Rotuma); 366–70 (Samoa); 384–91 (Society); 404 (Tikopia); 374–84 (Tonga); 403 (Uvea): *see also* Councillors
- Migrations, *see* Origin and migrations
- Miru, demon of Avaiki, I 387
- Mitiaro: and Mauke dominated by Atiu, I 295, 296, cf. 298, 299: meaning of name, I 250
- Moeava (Paumotu): adopting children of brother Tangaroa, I 335: descended from Munanui? I 337: enemies killing Tangaroa's sons, I 336: establishing rule at Takaroa, I 336: Hao-Takaroa descent, I 335, 336, 341: son contesting *ariki* rights of Tangihia, I 336, II 79–80: a "Tangaroan," I 338, 341
- Mokoiro (Mangaia): aiding Rangi, etc. to drag up Mangaia, I 252: and brothers, ancestors of the Ngariki, I 252, 258, II 271: and brothers, joint kings of Mangaia, I 252: and brothers, rock emblems at *marae*, I 252: coconut leaf symbol of, I 253, 254, II 273, 324: priests of, I 253: as Ruler of Food, *see under* Food, Rulers of: "son," etc. of Rongo, I 252 and n. 2, II 271, III 67
- Months, begotten by Tane (Tahiti), I 244
- Moon: chiefs associated with, III 74? (Samoa); 79 (Society): god represented by, (Samoa), II 221
- Moso (Samoa): ally of Losi, I 99, 100: bowl emblem of? III 6: connection with *tuiaua*, I 100, II 239, III 64: eating souls of dead? III 6: enshrined in *tuiaua*, II 239: *fuia* bird sacred to, II 226: incarnate in cuttlefish, II 231: incarnate in cuttlefish, fowl, etc. II 223–4: incarnate in sting-ray, II 248: incarnate in turtle and mullet, II 243: incarnations eaten by priest, II 243: a land god, I 100: mock human sacrifice on eating incarnation of, II 248: prayed to before meal, II 243: worshippers eating incarnations dying, II 224
- Mother: and child, term for (Fotuma), II 207: relations with son (Penrhyn Is.), II 208: term for, II 212 (Duff); 207 (Fotuna); 201 and n. 8 (Marquesas); 205 (Niue); 204 (Paumotu); 208 (Penrhyn); 207 (Rotuma); 149 (Samoa); 199 (Society); 209 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga): term used classificatorily, II 140? (Samoa); 209 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga)
- (adoptive), term for, II 207 (Fotuna); 201 (Marquesas)
- Mother-in-law: same term for father-in-law and, (Niue) II 206: *see also* Society, II 200: term for, II 204 (Paumotu); 200 (Society)
- Mother's brother: called "father" (Duff), II 212: called "mother" (Tonga), II 178: called "uncle" (New Hebrides), II 213: children the "brothers" and "sisters" of father's sister and mother's

INDEX

449

- brother (Samoa), II 125, cf. 128–9: relations with sister's child, son, etc. *see under* Sister's child, etc.: term for, II 207 (Fotuna); 202 (Marquesas); 151 (Samoa); 210 (Tikopia); 180 (Tonga): term used classificatorily (Tonga), II 180
- brother's children, “brothers” and “sisters” (Tonga), II 179
- son, marrying wife of sister's son? (Samoa), II 155
- wife: called “mother” (Tonga), II 178: sister's son having rights over? (Samoa), II 153–4
- family, death caused by gods of, (Samoa), II 102
- sister: called “mother,” II 212 (Duff); 207 (Fotuna); 213 (New Hebrides); 209 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga); *see also* II 204 (Paumotu); 207 (Rotuma); 149 (Samoa): not marrying nephew (Tikopia), II 146
- sister's daughter, called “daughter” (Fotuna), II 207
- husband, called “father,” II 209 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga)
- Motoro (Mangaia): enshrined in bird and plant, II 271: fellow-worshippers of, not killing each other, II 347: god of the living, II 271: god of the Ngariki, I 259, II 271: a great god, I 257, 275: priest, Mautara, I 257, 259: priest of, ruling the island, II 426: and Rangī, I 275, II 271: and Ru (Aitutaki), I 287: and Ruatapu (Aitutaki), I 285: sinnet work emblem of, II 271: son of Tangiia, I 275, 285, II 271, cf. Aitutaki, I 287: Tiaio associated with, I 259: and Tino-mana (Rarotonga), I 275
- Mourners: kinswomen of deceased (Samoa), II 305, cf. Tonga, II 195–6: widows, avoidance of (Ongtong Java), II 302: widows, head-covering (Ongtong Java), II 302: widows taboo till saw dolphins (Ongtong Java), II 302, 308
- Mourning, signs of: blood-shedding, not done by *tuitonga*, III 75: burning bodies (Samoa), II 223: head-beating (Samoa), II 223, cf. 225, 244: mourners changing names, III 154–5 (Mangaia); 155 (Niue); 153–4 (Society)
- Mua*, *see under* Councillors (Tonga)
- Muliana f. (Samoa): branches established through local marriages, II 32: chief seats, II 31: descent from Lafai, II 31: election of chief by council, II 31–2: group-fighting of villages of, II 85–6, 335–6: orator-family with own council, II 31–2: Tangaroa f. connected with, II 31, 355: and Tonumaip'e'a seat, II 32–3
- Mummification, kava people practising, I 5
- Mumui (Tonga): brother of Maecaliuaki, I 152: death, I 157: Finau the adopted son of, I 152: sister's daughter at funeral of, II 194 (tree, 191): of the Tubu family, I 146, 156: as *tuikano-kubolu*, etc. I 146, 147, 155–6, 434: Tukuahō the son of, *see* Tukuahō
- Munanui (Paumotu): “king” of Hao, I 336–7: possessing *mana*, I 336–7, III 87, 132: receiving title at birth? III 222: a “Tangaroan”? I 338, 341: venerated in Hao, etc. I 337
- Murder: causing war (Tahiti), II 344: compensation accepted for, (Samoa), II 338: vengeance for, binding (Samoa), II 338; *see also* Avenging death of relation
- Murderer: banished (Samoa), III 11: culprit or relation killed (Marquesas), II 351, III 25; (New Hebrides), II 354; (Samoa), II 338–9: culprit's children killed (Easter Is.), II 354: culprit's village at mercy of king (Uvea), II 354: fire set to house of, (Mangaia), II 349, III 23: hanged (Sikiana), III 30: killed (Niue), II 353, III 27; (Samoa), III 12; (Society), ? III 21: killed and eaten (Paumotu), III 26: set adrift (Ellice), III 29
- Nafanua (Samoa, etc.): and the *alatau* of Falealupo, I 83–4, 424: ancestress of Tonumaip'e'a f., I 75, 78, 79, 95, 104, 116, 122, 424, II 33, III 65: coconut-leaf emblems of, worn in battle, II 241, 320: and coconut leaves as taboo sign, II 241, 320 and *n. 2*: coming from Fiji, I 117: daughter of Savea Si'uleo, I 95, 116: high priest of, I 78, 79, III 214: inspiring orator chiefs, III 47: Manu'a ancestral home of, I 104, 109, 116: and the shore path, I 272 *n. 1*: and the *tafa'ifa* titles, I 78–80, 116, III 214: a “Tangaroan” goddess, I 75, 116–17, 125: and the Tuamasanga capital, II 11–12, 461, III 113: and Tutuila *faletele*, II 453–4: and the twin goddesses, I 116 (Samoa); 116–17 (Tonga): a war goddess, I 75, 78, 104, 116, II 12, 241, III 252–3: worshipped in Savai'i and Tonga, I 116–17
- Nails of infant, received by “father's sister” (Banks), II 164
- Names: avoidance of name of animal incarnations (Samoa), II 223, III 95: avoidance of name of god, III 95 (Ellice, Rotuma, Samoa): avoidance of name of superior, III 95 (Mangaia, Uvea): avoidance of words forming names of chiefs (and gods), I 27; (Samoa), I 57, III 93–4; (Tahiti), III 94–5: boy named by nearest male relative (New Hebrides), III 152: boy named when incised (Samoa), III 151: changed if children of ill disposition (New Hebrides), III 155, 228: changed at marriage of chiefess

- (Society), III 154: changed in sign of mourning, III 154–5 (Mangaia); 155 (Niue); 153–4 (Society): chiefs giving names to king's child (Paumotu), III 152–3: child bearing name of god (Samoa), II 228, III 151, cf. III 153; cf. Uvea, II 293, III 153, child named after bird or fish: child belonging to father's or mother's family according to name (Society), III 151: child named at birth, III 151 (Marquesas, New Hebrides, Paumotu, Rotuma, Uvea): child named from circumstances of birth, etc. III 152 (Marquesas); 152, 153, cf. 156, 58 (Samoa); 152, 153 (Society): child named by mother's brother (Hervey), II 201: child named by parent (New Hebrides), III 151–2: child named by priest (Rotuma), III 151: children named by sacred king (Mangaia), III 151, cf. Easter Is. I 398: child's name fixed before birth (Samoa), III 151: of dead or living, used to taboo articles (Marquesas), III 159–60, 227–8: exchanged by women with men, III 158 (Society); ? 157 (Tonga): exchanging name with "friend," III 158–9 (Duff); 158 (Marquesas); 157 (Samoa); 159 (Sikaiana); 157–8 (Society); 157 (Tonga): exchanging names, temporarily or permanently? III 157, 158, 159, 160–1: "friend" as husband of name-friend's wife (Marquesas), III 158, 160, cf. Tahiti, II 200: "friend" regarded as member of family of person giving name, III 158, 160 (Marquesas); 157, 160 (Tonga), cf. Tahiti, II 200: girl named by nearest female relative (New Hebrides), III 152: identified with person holding, III 155, 157, 159–60, cf. 227–8: new name given to *areoi* initiate (Society), III 156: new name given to tattooed boy (Marquesas), III 156: parent and child not having same name (Tahiti), III 152: personal names, III 151–61: no sex distinction *re* (Samoa, Tahiti), III 153: taking name of enemy (challenge), (Tonga), III 156, cf. Society III 155–6, 159, 227: temporary, (of abdicated chief), Tahiti, III 153 *and n.* 10, cf. I 187, 199, 242: temporary, (of chief's heir), Samoa, III 153: temporary (of children), Marquesas, III 152: on weapons, II 326 (Marquesas); 327 (Niue): *see also* Titles (and family names)
- Nanomanga (Ellice group): connection with Nanomea and Niutao, I 378: government, I 380
- Nanomea (Ellice group), I 380
- Navel string: bamboo knife cutting, left on *marae* of god (Hervey), II 118: child dedicated to god after cutting of, (Hervey), II 118: exchange of gifts on dropping off of, (Tikopia), II 211, cf. 212: received by "father's sister" (Banks), II 163–4
- Navigation, skill of Polynesians in, I 3
- New Hebrides (Aniwa), origin of world, II 393
- New Hebrides, Polynesian elements in, I 414–15
- Ngatoaitale title (Samoa): granted by Afenga orators, I 76–7, 81, II 468: holder "greeted" at Afenga, II 469: one of the *tafa'ifa* titles, I 74, 76: origin, I 75, 77: passing to Nafanua, I 79: "pillars" of holder of, II 443: Tamasoali'i title granted with, I 81: with that of Tamasoali'i, controlling Tuamasanga, I 76–7
- Niue: ancient capital Paluki? I 348–9, 352–3: chief's language in, I 354, III 93: Motu group earlier than the Tafti, I 347, cf. 348, 352, II 52: Motu villages and "creators" of Niue, I 350: Mutalau, arriving and founding group in, I 351: Mutalau, dominance of people of, I 353: native names for, I 347: origin of, (Tongan), I 349–50: Tafti group, later migrants from Fiji, I 347–8, II 52: and Tonga, I 349–50, 351, 354: two main (hostile) groups in, I 347, 352–4, II 52, 353
- kings: elected from conqueror chiefs, I 354: elected by village chiefs, I 355: government by chiefs and, I 355: inauguration stone, II 80: institution of kingship deriving from Tonga or Samoa, I 354: interregnum periods, I 353, 354, 355, III 335: killed by opposition party, I 354: killed in times of scarcity, I 354, III 335: lists referred to, I 349, 350, 351, 352, 353: no permanent line of, I 352–3, 354–5: as priests, III 37–8, 335: Puni-mata, I 352: a representative of, in each village, II 493, III 133: Tihamaui, I 350, 351, 352, 353: Tuitonga, I 353
- Niutao (Ellice group), I 378, 380
- Nukufetau (Ellice), king of, I 380
- Nukuhiva: groups and sections (with areas), I 309–15: Happa group, I 310, 311, 313, 314, 319, 320: linguistic differences in, I 303–4, 315, II 46: Naiki group, I 312–14: Taioa group, I 311–12, 313, 314, 320, II 491: the Taipii and Teii groups, *see those names*
- kings: chiefs sometimes acknowledging suzerain, I 316–18, II 48, 490–1: king of whole island (modern), I 320, 321, 322–3, cf. 318: Porter's attempt at establishing king unsuccessful, I 318: *see also* Taipii and Teii groups
- Oaths: accused swearing innocence, etc. III 26–7 (Niue); 5–8 (Samoa); 14, 15 (Tonga): chiefs swearing allegiance (Tonga), III 14–15: perjury causing

INDEX

451

- illness or death (Niue), III 26-7; (Samoa), III 6, 7, cf. II 223; (Tonga), III 14-15
- Occupations, II 377-9 (Samoa); 384 (Tonga)
- Offerings to chiefs, *see under* First-fruits, and Food offerings, etc.
- (to gods): eaten by gods in animal form, II 246 (Samoa); 261 (Society): of food, at kava drinkings, II 313: food-offerings to Tangaroa (annual), Samoa, III 324: during illness (Tikopia), II 300, III 45; (Tonga), III 49: individual killing and offering sacrifice (Tonga), II 412: made by chiefs (Society), III 43; (Tikopia), II 300, III 45: made by king and priests (Fotuna), III 38: made by priests (Marquesas), II 429, 430; (Paumotu), II 436; (Samoa), III 40; (Society), II 414, III 50; (Tonga), II 409, 410-11; cf. Tikopia, I 412, 413, priest surrendering sacrificial powers to chief: made by priest's assistants, II 414 (Society); 409, 410 (Tonga): part of sacred fish, etc. offered before eaten, II 283? 284? 311-12? (Marquesas); 286, 312 (Paumotu); 226, 244, 311 (Samoa); *see also under* Turtle: of portion of meal, II 313: reverting to king (Society), III 78: reverting to priest (Ellice), II 439; (Marquesas), II 283; (Niue), II 438; (Samoa), III 40; (Society), II 420; (Tonga), III 351, 352: before war (Fotuna), III 38: *see also* First-fruits, and Human sacrifice
- Old men: acting as councillors, *see under* Councillors: leading councillors called *matua*, *see under* Councillors: prayers chanted by old people (Rotuma), III 336, 337: regulating food supply (Tokelau), III 340: same term for "grandparents" and, II 213 (New Hebrides); 149 (Samoa); 178 (Tonga): succession by oldest male (of family, etc.), I 374-7, III 394-5; (Rotuma), III 381, 391, 395; (Sikaiana), III 384, 395; (Tokelau), I 373, 376, III 382, 395; (Tonga), ? III 371; *see also* Succession by brothers, and reversion to son of eldest brother, *under* Succession: *see also* honorary title *tupu* meaning "the grown," II 433-4; (Samoa), II 357, 358
- Omens: from bird (Marquesas), II 282: from birds (clan gods?), (Mangaia), II 273, 278, 279; cf. Society, II 261-2, 263: of death (insects, birds, etc.), II 283, 284 (Marquesas); 280, 315 (Rarotonga); ? 290 (Rotuma); 271 (Society); 258, 261 (Tonga): from insect (war), (Society), II 270: from shells (war), (Mangaia), II 279, cf. Samoa, II 249, 250: from "totems," during illness (Samoa), II 251, *see also* appearance of "totem" before death, *under* Incarnation: from "totems," before war, II 290? (Rotuma); 249-50, cf. 241 (Samoa); cf. Hervey, II 279: before war, taken by warrior chief (Mangaia), III 36
- Ongtong Java: kings, I 414: succession to kingship, I 414, III 385: two islets permanently inhabited, I 414
- Orero, *see under* Traditions, etc. official recorders
- Orientation: of assembly house (Samoa), II 452-3, 454, 455: of corpse (Samoa), II 161; cf. god Temanovaroa, Mangaia, I 251-2
- Origin and migrations: I 1-39: Asiatic Archipelago the original home, I 2: Churchill's theory, I 2-3, 8-9, 9-12: and computation of time, I 12-18: "conquering race," and superior physique of chiefs, I 3, III 137-8; cf. Paumotu, III 87-8, and Rotuma, I 358, III 336, 338, duty of *sou* to be fat: "conquering race" theory, I 23, cf. 6: the dual people, I 5, 6, 7, 8, 302-3: the dual people, and the Proto-Samoans, I 8-9, 9-10: early migrations, dates, I 2, 12-13: Fiji as early settling place, etc. I 2, 4, 27, 29, 31, 33-4, 35-6: Fiji, and late Polynesian movements, I 12, 114-5: Fiji, and the "Rarotongans," I 31, 32, 33, 34, 35: Fornander's theory, I 18-19, 22-3, 24, 28, 29: Friederici's theory, I 9: Hocart's theory, I 114-15: India the original home, I 4, 18, 19, 20, 37: Indonesia, Papuans preceding Polynesians in, I 22-3: Indonesia, period of sojourn in, I 23-4: Indonesian period, variation in type during, I 24-6: inter-island connections, *see under names of islands*: kava people, I 5-6, 7-8, 302-3: kava people, and the Tonga-fiti, I 8-9, 9-10: the later kava people, and Smith's migrants, I 10: Lesson's theory, I 1: the "logs" and legends, I 2, 26-7, 29-31, 32-3, 34-6: Malays pressing Polynesians onward, I 24: the *manahune*, I 22-3: migration to Java, I 22: migration to Marquesas ("Rarotongans"), I 31: migration to New Zealand, I 4: migration to Pacific, date, I 27-8: migrations to E. Pacific, I 32, 38, 39, 49, 130: migrations to New Caledonia, New Hebrides, etc. I 34: migrations from the west, I 3-4, 12: names of traditional fatherland, I 19-20, 21: New Guinea, and reflex migrations, I 10-11: New Guinea, routes N. and S. of, I 2, 10-11, 28, 29: post-"Rarotongan" migration from India, I 37-8, 39: Proto-Samoans coming by two routes, I 2, 10: "Rarotongan" migrations, I 38-9, cf. 32-6: "Rarotongans," meaning of term, I 30: Rivers's theory, I 4-8: Samoa as early settling

- place, etc. I 2, 28–9, 38, 88: Samoa, and the “Rarotongans,” I 32–3, 34, 38: Smith’s theory, I 20–22, 24, 28–30, 32–9, 38–9: Solomons, branch migration through, I 11, 12: South Philippine route to Samoa, I 11: Tonga as early settling place, I 28–9, 38, cf. 2: Tonga, and the “Rarotongans,” I 32–3, 34, 38, 88: the Tongafiti people, I 2, 9: Tregear’s theory, I 4
- Oro (Society Group): *marae* more numerous than those of Tane, I 247: *marae* in various islands, *see Marae* of Attahuru, Borabora (Vaiotaa), Huahine, Papara, Papara (Tuarai), Ra’iatea, Tahaa, Tautira, Vaiari (Tahiti): rency of cult of, I 244, 248: relationship to Hiro, I 213, 220, cf. 208, 243: son of Tangaroa, I 213, 248: spreading of cult of, I 248–9: Tane cult superseded by Tangaroa-Oro cult, I 245–9: Tane at war with, I 245–6
- (Borabora): Borabora and Ra’iatea centres of cult of, I 237: Oro deriving from Borabora, I 220, 246: and Puni, I 244: superseding Tane, I 246
- (Eimeo), superseding Tane, I 246
- (Ra’iatea): founding *areoi* society, I 219: kings the high priests of, I 221, III 34, 77: principal image at Opoa *marae*, I 219: Ra’iatea and Borabora centres of cult, I 237: rejected by Ra’iatean dependencies on conversion of king, I 221: son of Tangaroa, I 219, 220: superseding Tangaroa, I 219–22
- (Tahaa), superseding Tane, I 246
- (Tahiti): ancestor of chiefs, III 67: the “ark” of, III 34: Attahuru as centre of cult of, I 233: bird emblem on Paea canoe, II 322: coming to Tahiti from Ra’iatea, I 220: human sacrifice to, I 207, 208: human sacrifice to, before war, II 343: human sacrifice to, during war, I 223, II 419; *see also* under *marae* of Attahuru, Ra’iatea, and Tautira: human victims offered to, sent on to Tane, I 246–7: image at Attahuru, removal to Tautira, etc. I 206–8, 223–4, 228, 238, 243, II 266, 484, III 34: image of, at inauguration ceremony, I 223: Pomare chiefs worshipping, I 237–8, 243, III 34: priest of, (Ra’iatean connection), I 223: Ra’iatean wishing to dedicate Teva *marae* to, I 225–6: rency of cult of, I 220: red feather symbol of, given to combatants, II 343: regarded as only war-god by missionaries, II 344: superseding Tane, I 246–7: Tane and, principal gods, I 243–4: Tane, Tangaroa and, principal gods, I 237: Tangaroa associated with, I 223, 243, 248: Tangaroa invoked less often than, I 247: Tautira, the later centre of cult of, I 223: Tautira *marae* founded before days of Teva control? I 227–8: not a Teva god originally, I 222, 224–8: Teva *marae* of, modern, I 228–9
- Orphans: adoption of, and removal of marriage restrictions (Samoa), II 125, 129: adoptive fathers securing inheritance to? (Ellice), III 315–16: father’s brother as guardian (Samoa), II 149, cf. Hervey, II 201: father’s brother marrying the widow on account of, (Samoa), II 125: widows and, despoiled and evicted (Paumotu), III 303, cf. 304
- Pa (Tai-te-ariki, Te-ariki-upoku-tini): Atea as ancestor of, I 272, III 68: carried? III 84: genealogy referred to, I 268, 272, 273, III 68, 390: head of Tangiia group, I 268, 270, 272–3, II 78, 362, III 68: Pa f. one of chief branches of Tangiia group, I 279, 280, 281: as priest? III 36: a principal chief, I 279: seat in Makea *marae*, II 77, 78: seated on slaves, III 84: succession to title of, III 390, 392: Tai-te-ariki the first to hold Pa title, I 272, 273: Tai-te-ariki, Iro’s son, adopted by Tangiia, I 234, 270, 272–3, III 68: Tai-te-ariki and Ra’iatean legend, I 234: Tangaroa as ancestor of, III 68, cf. I 272: Tutarangi, as ancestor of, I 272
- Paea, Tahiti, *see* under Attahuru
- Papara chiefs, *see* the Teva, Papara chiefs, Vaiari chiefs
- Paradise: passage through sea to, (Samoa), I 102: Puluotu an island in west (Samoa), I 95: Puluotu, Si’uleo the god of, (Samoa) I 95, 116, II 233, cf. I 127: in skies, and Tangaroa cult (Samoa), I 95, cf. kava people, I 7, 302–3: souls of dead going to, (Tonga), II 396, cf. Marquesas, II 306, souls of priests going to sky: *see also* the Dead, souls of
- Parent: term for, II 204 (Paumotu); 208 (Penrhyn); 201 (Rarotonga); 198 (Society); 178 (Tonga): term including “nephew” (Paumotu), II 204
- Parent-in-law, terms for (Society), II 198, 200
- Paumotu group: creation myths, I 338–40, III 71: Fakarava formerly called Havaiki, I 326: native name, I 170: the Pomare chiefs deriving from, I 195, II 41: seasonal nomadism in, I 325: and suzerainty of the Pomare, I 241, 337–8: *see also* names of islands
- Pava (Samoa): ally of Losi, I 99, 100: banished from Manu’a to Upolu, I 100: derived from creeper, I 100: and Fanonga, fighting Tangaroa, I 102, 122, 125: father of Fanonga, I 101: and Fe’e, I 100: leaf emblem of, worn by worshippers in battle, II 242, 319: Tangaroa killing child of, II 242, 319
- Peace: conclusion of, *apa’a pia* ceremony,

INDEX

453

- (Tahiti), II 343: envoy, "sister's son" of enemy, II 176 (Fiji); 157 (Samoa), *see also* chief's "jester" as messenger *under* Servants, etc.: envoys, persons related to opponents (Marquesas), II 350: green boughs as emblems of, (Society), II 343: human sacrifice at conclusion of, (Mangaia), I 253, 256, 257, II 348, III 288-9: kept between brother's sons by father's sister (Samoa), I 63, 67, II 103, 104, 333, cf. 336-8: made by father's "sisters," etc. (Samoa), II 104: made by king (Mangareva), III 132; (Samoa), II 330; (Tonga), I 164, III 120; (Uvea), I 371, III 135; cf. Mangaia, sacred king controlling drum of peace, I 256, 257, 419, III 67: made by king and chiefs, etc. (Society), II 483, cf. 484, III 123: made by orator-priests (Samoa), III 48-9: persons negotiating, wearing tokens of humility (Tonga), II 341: plantain as emblem of (Society), III 17
- Penrhyn Is. *see* Tongareva
- Pigeons: of Aana, following exiled inhabitants (Samoa), II 224: caught with birdlime (Samoa), II 238: not eaten (Tikopia), II 298: god immanent in wing of, II 227 (Samoa); 252-3 (Tonga): gods incarnate in, II 272? (Mangaia); 221, 224, 239, 247 (Samoa); 298, 300 (Tikopia); 252 (Tonga): killing of, a crime, II 224 (Samoa); 253 (Tonga): land set apart for, (Tonga), II 253-4: Maui in form of, (Mangaia), II 278: names of orators, etc. connected with, (Samoa), II 236: pets of chiefs, etc. II 303 (New Hebrides); 235 (Samoa); 254 (Tonga): sacred, II 289 (Rotuma); 253, 254 (Tonga): shot with bow and arrows (Samoa), II 238: "sovereignty" exchanged for famous pigeon (Samoa), II 236: "symbolical" name for (Niue), II 292: trapping of ordinary species (Samoa), II 238, 254
- (*glocicera carpophaga*), Samoa: caught with nets, Samoa, II 235-8, 239 (*details under* Feasts); cf. Niue, II 292, Tonga, II 254: chiefs' language used *re*, II 236, 238: lunar period of catching, II 236, 238: the sacred species, II 238-9: and Sina, II 238
- Pigs: best parts due to important people (Samoa), II 243, 313: chief sharing pork with retainers (Society), III 356-7: chiefs' food (Tonga), III 326: chiefs' right to subject's pigs, III 361 (Fotuna); 353-4, 355, 356 (Society); 349 (Tonga): council controlling breeding of, (Samoa), III 322, 323-4: not daily food of minor chiefs (Tonga), III 326: due to head chief (Rarotonga), I 268: gods immanent in parts of, (Samoa), II 221, 227, 243: killed for feasts and guests (Samoa), III 323, 324, 345: not killed for guest during *ahui* (Marquesas), III 332: not killed for individual use (Samoa), III 323, cf. Tonga, III 326: offered to king, on removal of taboo, III 329, 357 (Society); 326 (Tonga): pens for, III 309 (Rotuma); 323 (Samoa): spirit returning in pig (Rotuma), II 307: taboo before feast, III 340 (Fotuna); 332 (Marquesas); 326 (Tonga): tabooed to increase stock (Tonga), III 326: tabooing of, by chiefs (Society), III 328
- Pili (Samoa): ancestor of Ationgie, I 61: ancestor of Lealali, I 60-1, III 172: ancestor of Malietoa, III 64: coconut derived from head of, II 233, 234, III 253; cf. II 274 (Hervey); 303 (New Hebrides); 284 (Paumotu); 267 (Society): and house for Tangaroa f. I 50: incarnate in eel, I 104, II 228, 231, 233: incarnate in lizard, II 231, 232: and lizard-sign in houses, II 319: Manu'an influence over Upolu declining after time of, I 106-8: of Manu'an origin, I 58, 60, 101, II 233-4: marrying daughter of *tuiaana*, I 58, 93, 94, 101, 126-7, II 20, 228, III 172, 258, cf. III 63-4: marrying daughter of *tuimanu'a*, I 58, 101, III 258: marrying Sina, etc. I 48: and net-fishing, II 232: Penga as ancestor of, II 232: pre-Tangaroans in Upolu in time of, I 92-4, 126-7: Savai'i founded by son of, I 59, 60, cf. Lealali, 60-1: son going to Manono, I 59: sons neutral in Losi war, I 101, 122: Tangaroa as ancestor of, I 48, 58, II 231: and the Tongan wall, II 234-5, III 253: Upolu divided among sons of, I 58-9, 106, III 250, 258, 321: Upolu people descended from sons of, I 58-9: violating Sina (Samoa), II 233-5; cf. II 274 (Hervey); 280-1 (Marquesas); 284 (Paumotu); 267 (Tahiti); 258-9 (Tonga): "will" of, I 58-9, 429, III 321
- Pitcairn Is. and Anua Motua, I 327
- Plantain, *see* Banana trees, etc.
- Polyandry (Marquesas): "brothers" etc. sharing wife, II 121: chief's "servant" sharing chief's wife, II 397 *and n.* 1: paternity of child uncertain, II 120: "servant" acting as husband, II 121, cf. "fire-maker," II 398 *and n.* 2: *see also* Lending wives
- Polygyny: chiefs having principal and secondary wives (Samoa), II 148-9: king having several wives (Rarotonga), II 201: rarely practised (Marquesas), II 121: secondary wives returning to own houses (Samoa), II 158: wife bringing brother's daughter as concubine (Samoa), II 161, 171: wife bringing sister as concubine (Samoa), *see under* Wife's sister

- Pomare (Tu) I: abdication on birth of son, I 199, III 196, cf. 153 and *n.* 10: adopting new name after death of son, III 154: adopting new names after birth of son, I 199, 200, 242, III 153, 196: adoption of name Pomare, I 200, 242, cf. III 95: attaining power through Attahuru chiefs, I 192, 193–7: banishing offenders, III 19: break with Attahuru and Tefana, I 197–8, 199–200: “ceding” land to English, III 277, 286, 287: chief of Purionuu, I 178: death, I 208: in Eimeo, I 201, cf. 209: eldest sister waiving rights in favour of, III 374: exchanging name with Europeans, III 157, 158: fed by attendant, III 82, 83: and food supply, III 327–8: giving cloth to chiefs at feast, III 356: Hiro as ancestor of, I 213, III 66: inability to enter Hapape, I 196, II 72: influence over Hapape acquired later, I 197: as “king,” mistaken ideas of English *re*, I 197–8, II 344, cf. I 203: and the Papara chiefs, I 200, 202–3, II 73: Pare the home of, I 196: political energy of wife of, II 117–18: as priest, III 34, cf. prayers for victory, II 342, III 34: Ra’iatean chief aided in war by, II 342–3: Ra’iatean descent, I 196, 213, 243, II 72, III 66: and Ra’iatean *marae*, II 72: and Ra’iatean *maro-ura*, I 196: related to sub-chiefs in own area, II 41: right to wear *maro-ura* at Paea, I 194, 195, II 72–3, cf. I 224 *n.* 2, II 361: seizing the *maro-ura* from Paea, I 201, 202: sharing gifts with retainers, etc. III 356, 357: son of Teu, I 189, 192, 195, 196, 241: yielding power to son, III 372: younger son as Vehiatua, I 201 and *n.* 4, cf. 195
- (Tu) II: adopting name Pomare, I 242: adopting name Pomare after father’s death, I 200: assumption of power, III 372: Attahuru chiefs resenting assumptions of, I 206–7, 208: and the Attahuru image, I 206–8, 223–4, 228, 238, 243, II 266, 484, III 34: birth of, I 199: as diviner, III 34: Eimeo title of, III 163: Eimeo under influence of, I 201, cf. 209–10: an exile in Eimeo, I 208–9, III 211: fed by attendant, III 83: first king of all Tahiti, I 171 and *n.* 4, 192 *n.* 5, 209, cf. 201–2: inauguration, II 423–4: intrigues against father, I 204–6, III 68, 372: prayers for victory, II 342, cf. I 207: praying to gods, etc. III 34: proclaimed king as infant, III 196: and Ra’iatean kingship, I 216–17: sanctity, III 79–80: sanctity of father passing to, at birth, III 220–1: sharing food with retainers, III 356, 357: successor to, choice of, III 199, 376: Tu title passing to, at birth, I 242, III 153 and *n.* 10, cf. 196: younger brother becoming Vehiatua, I 201 and *n.* 4
- chiefs: ancestor of, adopted by Pare chief, I 195: attaining rank through marriages, II 41, cf. I 195: attaining rank through Ra’iatean descent, I 244: becoming supreme by killing out race of chiefs, I 203, 209: chiefs of Purionuu, I 189, 236, *see also* Purionuu: and council meetings, II 482–3, 484, 485: family god of, I 243, cf. 208: kinship with Vehiatua, I 195: Oro worshipped by, I 237–8, 243, III 34: of Paumotuan origin, I 195, II 41: and suzerainty over Paumotu, I 241, 337–8: Tane not the god of, I 237–8: Tu, the god of? I 241–3: Tu the hereditary name of, I 241–2, III 153 and *n.* 10, 163
- Porpoises: eaten by men only (Tongareva), II 295: originally human, II 304, 308 (Samoa); 269–70 (Society): Vatea and, (Mangaia), II 272, 277
- Prayers: chant at canoe-making (Hervey), II 427: chant at harvest feast (Rotuma), III 336–7: chant at human sacrifice (end of war), (Mangaia), III 289: of chief, bringing dead to life (Samoa), III 215: of chief, making living sacrifices die (Aitutaki), I 283–4, III 36, cf. II 79: chief praying for crops (Rarotonga), III 330: chief praying and sacrificing (Tikopia), II 300: chief praying for sick, III 44 (Rotuma); 43 (Society); 45 (Tikopia); 44 (Uvea): family head praying to family god (Samoa), III 40: at inauguration of secular king (by sacred king, etc.), Mangaia, I 256, III 44: incantation on imposing taboo, term for, (Tahiti), III 329: incantations of priests destroying enemy (Easter Is.), II 439, *see also the Alataua*, prayers during war: invocation formulae (Society), II 423: king a learned man (Mangareva), III 132, 134: king praying, etc. at turtle ceremony (Funafuti), II 310, 494; (Marquesas), 282, III 36–7; (Paumotu), II 286–7, III 71: king reciting, III 37 (Niue); ? 37 (Paumotu), cf. 38 (Fotuna), and 34 (Society): king (sacred), called *te ariki karakia* (Mangaia), I 254: king’s prayers causing flood (Rakahanga), II 296: king’s son praying for rain (Easter Is.), I 398: of kings (sacred), warding island from spirits (Mangaia), I 254, 255, 419: mistake in uttering, disastrous, II 419 *n.* 2 (Samoa); 419 (Society): old people chanting at feast (Rotuma), III 336–7: one term for “authority” and, III 33: oratorical power of heir to chief important (Samoa), III 367: (and power) given to Akatauiria (Mangaia), I 252, 257, 428, III 67; cf. Tolufale (Samoa), I 58–9: priests as chanters of (Marquesas), II 429, 430, 431; (Paumotu), II 433, 434,

INDEX

455

- 436: priests and kings reciting, III 38? (Fotuna); 34 (Tahiti): priests praying in *marae* (Society), II 414 (cf. 415, 416), 421, III 50: priests praying for sick chief (Tahiti), I 228: religious language, *see under* Chief's language: rhythmical prayers to Rongo (Mangaia), I 254, cf. prayers to minor gods, II 425: not understood by common people (Society), III 92, cf. Rotuma, III 337: warrior chief praying when taking omens (Mangaia), III 36: *see also the Alataua*, prayers during war, Cursing, Invocation, *and* Traditions, etc.
- Pregnancy: and food-presents of husband's f. (Samoa), II 107-8: induced by bathing in sacred water (Tonga), II 259: induced by fruit of tree (Tahiti), II 268-9: induced by sacred food? (Tonga), II 258, 260: neglect of food taboos during, causing birthmarks? II 257-8: owl revealing (Tonga), II 258, 261: pregnant woman eating pork (Tahiti), I 186: wife at father's house till delivery (Samoa-Tonga), I 62
- Priestesses: II 440 (Manahiki); 438 (Niue); 437? (Paumotu); 438 (Rotuma); 409 (Samoa); 425 (Society); 414 (Tonga); 438-9 (Uvea): of divisions (Paumotu), II 436: epileptic woman as priestess (Samoa), II 409: having altars in own houses (Marquesas), II 432, cf. Society, II 425: high priestess (virgin), (Society), II 425: (lower class) officiating for own sex? (Society), II 425: old women acting as (Samoa), II 408, 409: priestess of district god (Tonga), II 259: priestess of god Apelesa (Samoa), II 240: priestess of village god (Rotuma), II 290, 438: sister of family head as priestess (Samoa), II 102, 409, III 40 *and n.* 3; cf. Tonga, II 180-1, 188, 189, the *tamaha*: women not officiating at *marae*? (Society), II 425
- Priests: annual election of high priest by chief (Ongtong Java), III 385-6: appointed by chiefs (Society), III 50-1, 59-60: appointed by king (Tokelau), II 439, III 52: appointed by Tangiia (Rarotonga), I 270, II 427-8: assistants of, II 430, 431 (Marquesas); 433 (Paumotu); 414 (Society); 409, 410 (Tonga): chiefs acting as, III 44 (Hervey); 44, cf. 54 (Marquesas); 54 (Niue); 44, cf. II 80 (Paumotu); 44 (Rotuma); 40, 41 (Samoa); 43, 44, 356 *and n.* 5 (Society); 45 (Tikopia); 42-3, 50 (Tonga); 44-5 (Uvea); *see also under* Human sacrifice, Prayers, etc.: chiefs not acting as (Tonga), II 411, 412, III 41, cf. 41-2: chiefs or minor chiefs (Society), II 417, 423, III 50-1; (Tokelau), II 439, III 52; (Tonga), II 412, 413, III 41-2; *see also* Classes of society, relationship, priests related to chiefs: not a class apart, III 138; (Society), II 417-18; (Tonga), II 411-12: classes of, II 439-40 (Easter Is.); 439 (Ellice); 438 (Fotuna); 425-8 (Hervey); 440 (Manahiki); 428-32 (Marquesas); 437-8 (Niue); 432-7 (Paumotu); 438 (Rotuma); 407-9 (Samoa); 414-25 (Society); 440 (Tikopia); 439 (Tokelau); 409-14 (Tonga); 438-9 (Uvea): communicating will of gods (Easter Is.), II 439; (Ellice), II 439; (Hervey), II 425-6; (Marquesas), II 429, 431; (Samoa), II 407, III 40; (Tonga), II 409: consultation of, before war (Rotuma), II 290, 438, cf. Society, II 425: deciding *re war* (Samoa), III 40, cf. Marquesas, I 310, Society, II 419: deformed, etc. persons as, (Marquesas), II 431-2; (Samoa), II 409, III 40: deified after death (Marquesas), II 326, 428, 429: deified during life (Samoa), II 240; *see also the atua*, Marquesas, II 362, 397, 428, III 84-5, 331: delegates of chiefs (Society), II 418, 420-1, III 51, 54, 59-60, cf. III 57-8: of districts (Marquesas), I 317; (Samoa), II 407; (Society), II 417, III 43, 51: as diviners (Society), III 18, 34; ? (Tonga), II 409, 410: exorcising "spirit" from turtle (Penrhyn), II 294-5: as experts in handicrafts, etc. (Mangaia), II 426-7, cf. Samoa, II 408: as experts, and term *tohunga*, etc. II 407-8; 427 (Mangaia); 377, 408 (Samoa); 414, 415 (Society): of families (Fotuna), II 438: of family, etc. the family head (Samoa), II 153, 408, 409, III 40, 41; (Society), II 415, 417, III 43, 44; (Tonga), III 42: of family gods (Samoa), II 407: family of priest sacred (Society), II 417: feared and venerated (Marquesas), I 317, 429, II 431; (Samoa), II 407; (Society), II 418, 420: feasts appointed by, (Samoa), II 407, III 40, cf. Society, II 420, 421: first-born as chief and priest (Mangaia), III 35-6, 200: "general" priests, III 33, 54-5; 52 (Marquesas); 52 (Paumotu); 41, cf. 40 (Samoa): the *haerepo*, *see that title*: "hereditary" priests, III 33, 58, 60; 52 (Rarotonga); 41, cf. 40, 46-9, 146 (Samoa); 42, 49-50 (Tonga): high priests, *see below*: not holding conferences (Tonga), II 411-2: and human sacrifice, *see under that title*: illness caused and cured by, *see under* Illness: inspiration of, *see under* Inspiration, *and* Inspired persons: intercessors, II 429 (Marquesas); 409 (Tonga): invoking the god, *see under* Invocation: king and chiefs having own, (Society), II 417: king as (high)-priest (Easter Is.), I 395, 402, 403, cf. 397; (Manahiki), III 38; (Mangaia), I 255, 256, 419, II 347-8, III 35; (Niue),

- III 37–8, 335; (Paumotu), III 37; (Rarotonga), III 22, 36; (Rotuma), III 337–8; (Samoa), III 33–4, 38–9; (Society), I 221, II 415, III 34, 43, 77, 78; (Tokelau), I 374, III 38, 88; (Tonga), I 151, 158, 165, 166, 419, III 350, 352, cf. I 163, III 34–5, 41: king and priest consecrating new house? (Easter Is.), I 398: king's son ordained priest (Paumotu), II 436, III 334–5: land owned by, (Society), II 420: the *lavaka* (Tonga), II 411, III 42: leading *areoi* as priest (Society), III 44: of lower classes, not officiating for higher classes (Society), II 417, III 51: *matabule* as, (Tonga) II 38? 380? 412, III 42, 351: *manahune* as, (Society), II 417: moth as omen of death of, (Marquesas) II 283, 284: *mua* as priest (Tonga), II 413: naming child (Rotuma), III 151: national priests, II 407 (Samoa); 415, 417 (Society): “natural” priest, the head of social group, I 242, 422, II 101–2, 111, III 33, 39–40, 45–6, 57, 59, 60, 61, 98, 99, 110, 214, 218, 397; (Samoa), III 40–1, 224; (Tonga), III 76: “natural” priests, III 33; 43 (Society); 42 (Tonga): and offerings, *see under* Offerings: office, chief revoking (Society), III 51: office hereditary (Hervey), II 426, 427; (Marquesas), II 430, 431; (Niue), II 438; (Rotuma), II 438, cf. sting-ray god, 289; (Society), II 418, III 43, cf. 51; (Tonga), II 411, 413: office hereditary in family (Samoa), III 40: office not hereditary (prophets?), Samoa, II 408: office not hereditary (secondary priests), Marquesas, II 429, 430, 431: office passing to brother or son (Funafuti), III 383: office passing to nephew (Samoa), III 40: “official” priests, III 33, 55, 57–8, 59; 52 (Rarotonga); 41, cf. 40, 46, 49 (Samoa); 50–1 (Society); 42, 49–50 (Tonga): as orators at *fono* (Fotuna), I 365; *see also* priests as councillors, etc. (Marquesas), III 52, 54; (Tikopia), I 412, 413: orators as priests (Rarotonga), III 51–2; (Samoa), I 54, 473–4, III 41, 46–9, 58, 60, 146, *see also* I 429; (Society), III 50, 51; (Tonga), III 49–50, 60, cf. II 38, 380: orators as priests, the *orero* (Society), II 423–4, cf. 421, 422: the *orero*, *see also under* Traditions, etc. official recorders: of particular gods, *see under names of gods*: performing ceremonies (Ellice), II 439; (Marquesas), II 429, 430, 431; (Paumotu), II 435, 436; (Rotuma), II 290, III 336–7; (Society), II 414, 416, 421; (Tonga), II 38; *see also under* Prayers, etc.: porter-guardians of images, *see under* Images: powerful (Ellice), II 439; (Mangaia), II 426; (Marquesas), I 310; (Niue), II 438; (Paumotu), II 436, III 52; (Samoa), II 407; (Society), II 420; (Tonga), II 413: praying, etc. *see under* Prayers: as prophets, *see under* Prophets: *ra'atira* as, (Society) III 43, 51: ranked according to rank of god, etc. (Tonga), II 413: respected according to rank (Tonga), II 411: sanctity of persons of, III 85, 86–7 (Marquesas); 87 (Paumotu); 81 (Society); 76 (Tonga): secondary priests, II 429–31 (Marquesas); 432, 433, 434, 435 (Paumotu); 414, 421 (Society); 440 (Tikopia): secondary priests, duties, II 429, 430, 431 (Marquesas); 436 (Paumotu): and the selection of chiefs (Mangaia), III 202, cf. 201, 219: as sorcerers, *see under* Sorcerers: souls of, going to sky (Marquesas), II 306: no special priests? (Tonga), II 412, 413: terminology adopted *re*, III 33: terms for, II 425, 427 (Hervey); 437 (Niue); 432–5 (Paumotu); 407–8 (Samoa); 414–17 (Society); 409–11 (Tonga): traditions, etc. recited and taught by, *see under* Genealogies, and Traditions, etc.: of “town” (Samoa), III 40: of village gods (Rotuma), II 289, 290: of villages (Society), II 417, III 43
- high priests: II 427–8, cf. I 259 (Hervey); 440 (Manahiki); 432, 433–4, 435 (Paumotu); 421 (Society); 440, cf. I 412 (Tikopia); 409, 410 (Tonga): consecrating king, II 428 (Rarotonga); 421, cf. 421–2 and 423–4 (Society): consulted *re* state matters (Marquesas), II 429: curse of, (Tahiti) I 205: deifying the images, etc. (Paumotu), II 435: elected annually by chief (Ongtong Java), III 385–6: exempt from work (Paumotu), II 436: insignia (Society), II 421: all *marae* within area dominated by high priest (Society), II 421: never at minor *marae* (Society), II 421: one for each district or group (Marquesas), I 317, II 429, 431; (Society), II 414: performing ceremonies, II 435, 436 (Paumotu); 421 (Society): powerful (Paumotu), II 436: prince sometimes having more than one (Society), II 421: of royal, etc. descent (Paumotu), II 436; (Society), I 188, III 50, 51, 53: sanctity (Paumotu), II 436: sometimes officiating for two kings (Society), II 421 and *n.* I: as sorcerers, etc. (Marquesas), II 428, 429, 432: taboo appointed by (Marquesas), II 429, cf. III 332–3; (Paumotu), III 334
- Property: chief's efforts to retain personal gifts, III 359, 360 (Marquesas); 356, 357 (Society); 348, 350 (Tonga): chief's right to subjects' property, III 343; (Easter Is.), I 395, 401–2; (Fotuna), III 362; (Marquesas), III 359, cf. 359–60; (Rarotonga), III 290, 358;

INDEX

457

- (Samoa), III 100, 344; (Society), III 125, 354–5; (Tonga), I 151, III 117, 118, 265, 347, 349–50; (Uvea), I 371, III 28, 135: chiefs sharing, with followers, III 345? (Samoa); 354, 356–7 (Society); 347–8, 349, 350 (Tonga): chiefs not taking, without compensation (Marquesas), III 359: chiefs not taking subjects' property? (Tonga), III 347, 349: circulating between chief and family heads (Samoa), III 345–6: "clan" enjoying fruits of members' industry (Samoa), III 235–6, 237: common (to group, family), III 318 (Easter Is.); 295 (Marquesas); 301 (Paumotu); 287, 290, 292 (Rarotonga); 235, 236–7 (Samoa); 270–1 (Society); 265 (Tonga): common ownership and hospitality, III 234: common people not owning, (Tonga) III 13: inherited by children (Hervey), III 377: inherited by son, III 384 (Easter Is.); 381 (Niue); 369–70 (Tonga): large fishing-net group property, III 302–3, 304 (Mangareva); 311, cf. 311–12 (Rotuma); 323? (Samoa): mutual rights of friends *re*, (Tonga), III 265, 271, 307, cf. Easter Is. III 318: private, (animals, etc.), (Rotuma), III 310, 311: private, little respected, III 318 (Easter Is.); 303 (Paumotu); private, unpopularity of missionary law *re*, (Society), III 270: return expected from person taking, (Samoa), III 236: small nets, family property (Paumotu), III 302: and title, going together (Tonga), III 230, *see also* *under* Titles, etc.
- Prophetesses, II 432 (Marquesas); 437 (Paumotu); 425 (Society)
- Prophets: (Easter Is. *ivi-atua*), I 400; (Samoa), II 407; (Tonga), II 409, 410: high priests as (Marquesas), II 428, 429: office not hereditary (Samoa), II 409: priests as (Paumotu), II 436
- Pulotu, *see under* Paradise
- Punaauia, Tahiti, *see under* Attahuru
- Puni (Society Group): becoming head chief of Borabora, I 215, cf. 214: conquering Tahaa and Ra'iatea, etc. I 215–16: death, I 216: and spread of Oro cult, I 244
- Purahi (Moeatua), Tahiti: descent from elder branch of Papara f., I 194: and downfall of Papara, I 193: marriage with Vehiatua, I 194
- Purea (Oberea), Tahiti: building pyramid for son, I 174: controlling affairs on abdication of Amo, I 191–2: controlling own district in 1773, I 198: death, I 199: effort to establish son's supremacy, I 187–90, 192–5, II 72, 117: fed by attendants, III 83: making new *maro-ura* for son, I 201: power of Amo and, I 187, cf. 193: priest of, praying to Tane, I 238: *rahui* for son of, I 187–8, II 117, III 328: of Vaiari descent, I 187
- Purionuu (Tahiti): Ari'i Paea title of chief of, I 180: chief summoned to investiture of Teva chief, I 193: chiefs of, *see also* Pomare I, etc.: districts (eight), I 182, 183: independent of Papara, I 178, 187, 189, 190, 191: Pare and Arue sub-districts of, I 178, 180, 195: Pare chiefs, predecessors of the Pomare, I 183, 195, II 41: Tangiia connected with? I 236
- Quarrelling: in family, punished by dead relations (Tahiti), II 343, cf. 344, 348; cf. Easter Is., members of family on good terms, I 401: frequent (Mangareva), III 301: of parents, causing death of child (New Hebrides), II 354: no quarrelling within tribe (Marquesas), II 351: *see also* War, not shedding related blood
- Ra (Raa), Society Is.: connected with kingfisher, II 262: tail of, comet or stars, I 245: as war god, I 245
- Ra'atira, *rangatira*, *see under* Councillors (Rarotonga, Society)
- Rahou (Rahu), Rotuma: birds guiding, II 289: "creator" of Rotuma, I 359, II 289: dead chief, II 289: deriving from Samoa, II 289: first king appointed by, I 359: the first Rotuman king, II 289: not incarnate, II 288: and origin of island, I 359, II 289: Rotuman constitution founded by, I 359, II 289
- Rahui, *see under* Food supply, control, etc.
- Ra'iatea (Ulietea): and Aitutaki (Ruatapu), I 285, 293: ancient eminence of, I 212, 215: and *areoi* society, I 219: Attahuru people connected with, I 233–4, II 40–1: and Borabora, *see under* Borabora: chiefs summoned to investiture of Teva chief, I 193: creation myths connected with, I 211–12, 220: eight districts in, I 212: and Huahine and Tahaa, I 215, 217: islands tributary to, I 212: Manne-manne dominant in, I 216: *marae* of, *see under* *Marae*, etc.: name Havai'i applied to, I 210–11, 218: native names for, I 170: Oro going to Tahiti from, I 220: and peopling of Society group, I 211–12, cf. 219: Rarotongan connections with, I 234–6, 264: Tahiti, etc. breaking off from, I 211, 235, II 267, III 279: Tahitian "Tangaroans" connected with, I 233–4, 235–6, cf. 230, 231: Tangaroa specially connected with, I 211–12, 219–23, 230–2, 236–7, 248, II 267: and the "Tangaroans," I 218–22, 233: Tautira connection with, I 230, 231–2: Tu-te-rangiatea naming, I 218–19
- kings of: deified (during life), I 219, III 34, 77, 78: descended from Tan.

- garoa, I 221, cf. 219, III 66: early dynasty Tangaroa worshippers, I 219: fed by relation, III 83: genealogy referred to, I 212–13: high priests of Oro, I 221, III 34, 77: Hiro as ancestor of, I 213, 220–1, 226, III 66: living near Opoa, I 219: Pomare chiefs' relationship to, *see under* Pomare I, etc.: related to chiefs of the group, II 113–14: ruling whole island, I 212, cf. 217, II 341: title of, I 217 *and n.* 3, 221 *n.* 3, III 77: title of, not acquired by Pomare II, I 217
- Rain: controlled by king (Fotuna), III 340, cf. 38: king's son praying for (Easter Is.), I 398: *see also* Paumotu, III 333–4
- Rainbow: associated with Rongo (Easter Is.), I 387: associated with Tane (Society), I 246: gods immanent in, (Samoa), II 219, 221: symbol of god, as war omen (Samoa), II 249
- Rakaanga, I 381
- Rangi (Mangaia): appointing first of secondary sacred chiefs, I 255: and brothers, ancestors of the Ngariki, I 252, 258, II 271, III 67: and brothers, dragging up Mangaia, I 252: and brothers, first inhabitants of Mangaia, I 252: and brothers, joint kings of Mangaia, I 252: and brothers, rock symbols of, I 252: "drum of peace" given to, I 252, 253, 428: fighting the Tongans, I 259: holding both sacred and secular offices, I 254–5, III 67: and human sacrifice, III 288: in list of battles, I 261: and the Mautara family, I 259: and Motoro, I 275, II 271: son or grandson of Rongo, I 252 *and n.* 2, II 271, III 67
- Rank: banished chief retaining, (Society), III 211: defeated chief retaining, (Society), I 216, II 66, III 148, cf. Samoa, II 371: deposed chief retaining, (Tonga), III 210; cf. Teva, Vaiari chiefs (Tahiti), and *Tuitonga* (Tonga): descent of, *see that title*: grades little differentiated? (Marquesas), II 396, III 128, 130–1; (Rarotonga), II 394: hereditary and important (Marquesas), I 316, 323: of individual varying in different districts (Rarotonga), III 127, 150; (Tahiti), II 66: influence of chiefs derived from (Marquesas), III 130: lower classes rarely rising in, (Society), II 391, cf. Paumotu, II 400: lower classes rising in (through relationship), Tonga, II 38, III 142: lowest class "common" (Marquesas), II 399: the *marae* as record of, *see that title*: of members of same family (Tonga), III 369–70: men serving women "common" (Marquesas), II 398, 399: *mua* becoming *matabule* (kinship), Tonga, II 38, III 142: *ra'atira* never becoming chiefs (Society), II 390–1, III 148–9: singers and dancers "common"? (Marquesas), II 398 (cf. 399): taboo and "common," classes (Marquesas), II 396: tattoo-marks indicating, II 325 (Marquesas); 323 (Society), *see also* Paumotu, II 327
- Rapa Island, I 383
- Rape, punishment for (Samoa), III 2
- Rarotonga: and Aitutaki, I 283, 284, 285, 286, 288, 291, 292, 293: and Atiu, I 294, 295, 298: and Bukabuka, I 382: clan groups (in own areas), I 263–4, 278–82, II 44, *see also* Karika group, etc.: and division into eight, I 272: first settlers, from Hiva (? Ra'iatea), I 235, 264: Karika and Tangiia arriving in, etc. *see under those names*: and Manihiki, I 381: and Manu'a, I 38, 103, 266–7, 280, cf. 221, 230–2: and the Marquesas? I 235, 264: meaning of name, I 250: and Ra'iatea, I 234–6, 264: and Rotuma, I 266: and Savai'i, I 266–7: and Tahiti, I 234–6, 267, 280: and Tonga, I 266, cf. 274, 277 *and n.* 2, 280
- kings: king as priest, III 22: sacred and secular kingship? I 419: shark and turtle due to, II 311: *see also under* Karika group, etc.
- "Rarotongans": meaning of term, I 30: term altered to "Tangaroans," I 30, 69, 88, *see also* the "Tangaroans"
- Rata: ancestor of king of Mauke, I 299, III 69: descendants in Rarotonga, I 265
- Rats: not eaten by Miru chief (Easter Is.), II 296: and extraction of child's teeth (Hervey), II 278–9: not killed (Rotuma), II 289
- Rebellion: penalty, banishment, III 23 (Mangaia); 20, 211, 272 (Society): penalty, death (Samoa), III 11
- Relationship: classificatory system and exogamy, II 124: classificatory system unrealized by travellers, I 190–1: classificatory system, *see also under* Father, Mother, etc.: systems, simplified with higher culture, I 7
- terms, II 208 (Bukabuka); 212–13 (Duff); 207 (Fotuna); 200–1 (Hervey); 201–2 (Marquesas); 213 (New Hebrides); 205–6 (Niue); 213 (Ongtong Java); 208 (Penrhyn); 204–5 (Paumotu); 207 (Rotuma); 148–53 (Samoa); 213 (Sikaiana); 198–200 (Society); 209–10 (Tikopia); 178–98 (Tonga)
- Relations-in-law, term for (Society), II 200
- "Religion" and "magic," II 405–6
- Reptiles, gods incarnate in, II 220 (Samoa); 291–2 (Niue)
- Rii, changed into dog, etc. (Paumotu), II 287
- Rongo: later than Maui, I 302: pre-Tangaroan god, I 96, II 274–5
- (Easter Is.), clan associated with, I 387

INDEX

459

- Rongo (Hervey, Aitutaki): aiding Te-erui, I 285: head chief as priest of? III 36: priests inspired by shark, II 271, 278
- (Hervey, Mangaia): gifts to “sons,” I 252–3, 254–5, 428–9, III 67: god of dead, II 271: god of the Ngariki, II 274–5, 347, cf. 348 *n.* 1: god of war, II 271, 347–8: human sacrifice to, before conclusion of peace, I 253, 256, 257, II 348, III 288–9: human sacrifice to, before war, I 256, II 348 and *n.* 1: *marae* of, I 252, 255: the Ngariki descended from sons of, I 252, 258, II 271, III 67: Rangī, Mokoīro and Akataūira the sons or grandsons of, I 252 and *n.* 2, II 271, III 67: sacred king high priest of, I 165, 255, 256, 419, II 347–8, III 35: son of Vatea, II 275 *n.* 1, III 289: superior god of island, II 272 and *n.* 12, 347, 348 and *n.* 1, cf. I 255: supremacy lost by Tangaroa to, III 289: Tangaroa associated with, in Pili-Sina myth, II 274: Tavake daughter and wife of, I 252 *n.* 2: triton shell emblem of, II 271
- (Hervey, Rarotonga): brother of Tane, Tu and Tangaroa, I 266: daughter marrying ancestor of Karika chiefs, I 265, III 67–8: and the Makea title, I 265–6: son of Atea, I 266
- Rongo-ma-Uenga, god of Tutapu, I 268
- Rotuma: connection with Borabora, II 71–2: constitution founded by Rahou, I 359, II 289: “creation” of, (Samoan connection), I 359, II 289: districts, etc. I 355–7: Fijian title in, I 115, II 359, 363, III 162: the hill people, I 361–2, III 307–8: and Karika, I 266–7: the *malo* or conquering party I 360–1: Tongan warrior in, I 359
- kings: dual kingship, I 357–61, 420–1: no permanent king over whole island, I 356 and *n.* 2, 357–8
- sacred kings: abdication, etc. and “dying god,” III 335–9, 378: all buried on one hill, III 336: bodyguard, II 403: called *sou*, I 358, II 363: council consulted by, II 495: council presided over by, I 357 *n.* 9: deposition of, I 421, 428: divinity of, I 358, III 337: duty to be fat, I 358, III 336, 338: elected by each district in turn, I 358–9, 430, III 381, 494: first-fruits, etc. offered to, III 361, cf. 337: not governing, I 358, cf. 420: as high priests, I 420? III 338, cf. II 438: inauguration, III 335–6: insignia, III 336: list referred to, I 359, III 382: living where placed by *fakpure*, I 358: office abolished, I 356, 359: office nominally lasting six months, I 358, 430, III 336, 337, 338: office not hereditary, I 358, 420–1, 428: originally temporal chiefs also, I 359, 420, III 337–8: Rahu appointing first *sou*, I 359: respect due to, I 358, 360: rights *re* women, I 360, cf. Tonga (*tuitonga*), I 163: rival *sou* sometimes elected, I 360: not safe in war? II 403, cf. I 359: same man *sou* and *fakpure* at different times, III 381: suzerainty over whole island, I 358: tribute to, I 358: women *sou*, I 359, III 381–2: not working, I 358
- secular kings: called *fakpure*, I 357–8, II 363: elected, II 495: and food offerings for *sou*, III 361: office nominally lasting six months, II 495: orator speaking for, II 495: presidents of island council, I 357, 358, 359, II 495: same man *fakpure* and *sou* at different times, III 381: the victor-chief of one of two districts, I 357, 358, 359, cf. 360–1
- Ru, pre-Tangaroan god, I 96; *see also* Lu
- Ru (Aitutaki): ancestor of Ruatapu and Maro-una, I 287: building *marae*, I 282, II 62: coming from Avaiki, I 282: constitution founded by, I 282: descent from Atea, I 286, 289, 293, III 69: division of land by, I 282, 290, III 293: first settler, I 282, 289, 290: genealogies referred to, I 282, 286–9: related to Tangiia and Motoro, I 286–7, cf. I 293, III 68
- group (Aitutaki): males exterminated by Te-erui, I 282, 289, 290: Maro-una and his warriors marrying women of, I 284, 286, 289–90, 292, II 46, III 293: present landowners descendants of women of, I 284, 286, 289–90, 292, II 46, III 293: succession from father to son, I 282: Te-erui allotting land to women of, I 282–3, 289, 291, 292, II 46, cf. III 293: Tupu-o-Rongo marrying woman of, I 287, cf. 286, 288, 289, 293
- Ruahadu (Tahiti): convoying Oro to Tautira, I 208, II 266: shark god, I 208, II 266
- Rua-Hatu-Tinirau (Society): connected with sea and fish, I 238, 239: dedicating Huahine *marae* to Tane, I 238; *see also* Tinirau (Mangaia), II 277, (Samoa), II 230, 245
- Ruatamaine (Mangaia), and fish offerings, I 255
- Ruatapu (Aitutaki): Aitu clan routed by descendant of, I 284, 286, 291, 292: the *ariki* families descended in male line from, I 288, 289, 292–3: arrival at Aitutaki, I 282, 283, 284, 285, 290: building *marae*, for son Kirikava, I 283: descent from Atea, I 287, III 69: descent from Iro, I 285, 293: descent from Ru, I 287: establishing line at Aitutaki, I 283, 285, cf. 286: grandson of Motoro, I 285: Maro-una (Rarotongan), descended from, I 287, 289, 291, 293, II 46: Maro-una supplanting descendant of, I 284: and Mauke, I 283,

- 285, 298–9, III 69; and Ra'iatea, I 285, 293: son of, at Rarotonga, I 283: son of Tangiia, I 285, 293, cf. 275: a "Tangaroan," I 293: Taruia supplanted by, I 283, 286, 291, 292: Taruia's descendant claiming throne from, I 283–4, 291–3, II 79, III 36, 329: and Tonga, I 285, 293: Tupu-o-Rongo descended from, I 287, 288, 289, 293
- (Tonga): named in Tongan traditions, I 288, cf. 293: naming Rarotonga after Tonga, I 288: visiting son in Rarotonga, I 285, 293
- Sacred and secular offices (connection): III 32–60: basis of chief's power religious, I 426, III 55, 98–9; (Fotuna), I 363, III 54; (Mangaia), I 256–7; cf. Samoa, III 110–11, Society, III 124, and Tonga, III 120: one term for "prayer" and "authority," III 33, cf. Mangaia, I 252, 257, prayers and power given to Akatauira: partial delegation by chiefs, III 55–9: understanding between chiefs and priests (Marquesas), III 44, 54; (Niue), II 437–8, III 54; (Society), III 53–4; (Tonga), III 53: union of offices, *see also* chiefs as priest, orators as priests, etc. *under* Priests: united in chief, III 59; (Austral Is.), III 37; (Fotuna), I 363, III 38; (Mangaia), I 263, III 35–6, 200; (Paumotu), III 44; ? (Rarotonga), III 54; (Society), III 43–4, 53: *see also* dual kingship, *under* Kingship
- Safenunuivao f. (Samoa): branch of *tuiatua* f. II 26, 27, 467: Falealili branch founded through marriage, II 26: probably related to Salevalasi f. II 27: seats, II 26: *tuiatua* chosen from Salevalasi f. or, III 180, 183–4
- Salamasina (Samoa): and the *ainga* families of *tuiatua*, II 27: blood claims to the four titles, I 80: the first *tafa'ifa*, I 80, II 18–19, 27, 33, 375, III 144, 214: orator related to, III 144: *sa'oaualuma* name of *tuiaana* f. derived from, II 99 and *n.* I
- Salevalasi f. (Samoa): Amaile branch acquiring Mata'afa title, II 28–30, cf. III 175: branch of *tuiatua* f. II 26, 27, 467, cf. III 175: mother-to-daughter descent in tree of, II 92: probably related to Safenunuivao f. II 27: seats, II 26, 28: *tuiatua* chosen from Safenunuivao f. or, III 180, 183–4
- Salevalasi-Mata'afa f. *sa'oaualuma* name, II 99
- Salevao (Saolevao), Samoa: brother of Si'uleo, I 48, 96, II 233, 319: eel incarnation of, II 224, 233: as eel, and village-sign of Asau, II 318, 319: a family god, II 224: god of rocks, I 48: incarnate in turtle, II 224: and origin of Samoa, I 48, cf. 96: a Savai'i god, I 48: worshippers eating incarnations of, dying, II 224
- Samoa: areas in, terminology *re*, I 40, 41: "creation" myths, I 47–9, 89–90, 123–4, 138–9, cf. 104–5, II 219: districts, I 40, 42–3: division of land in, *see under* Savai'i, Upolu, Tuamasanga: as early settling place, I 2, 28–9, 38, 88: Fijian chiefs having Samoan wives, I 142: Fijian connection with, *see also* Tuifiti: Fijian title in, I 115, II 359, III 162: *fono* of all Samoa, II 448: and Fotuna, I 367: and Funafuti, I 378: governed by Leulumoenga, I 40, 43, 44: governmental centres, I 43–4: governmental centres, and terms *tumua*, etc. I 43, 44, 45, 74, II 442, 448–9, 464, 465, 466, 468: the great chiefdoms, I 40, 45: greeting for all Samoa, II 464: inferior origin of Upoluans, etc. I 90 and *n.* 5, 123–4, 125–6, 129, 138, 139, cf. 100, *see also* Tonga, I 136–42: the *malo* party in, I 85–7, 425: Manuans and Savai'ians of divine descent, I 90, 123–4, 138, 139, cf. 48–9, *see also* Tonga, I 136–42: name, origin of, I 48, 56–7: and Niue, I 354, II 292: peopled by Manu'a, etc. *see under* Manu'a: and Rahou of Rotuma, II 289: Tangaroan and pre-Tangaroan conflicts in, *see* Losi, Lu, and Pava, fighting Tangaroa, etc.: and the Tangaroans, I 32–3, 34, 38, *see also under* Tongan war: Tangaroans and pre-Tangaroans in, I 88, *see also under* names of islands: and Tonga (Tingilau), II 230: tributary to Tonga, I 142, 167: the *tuitonga* marrying Samoan women, I 142–3, cf. 136, *see also* Tonumaipe'a, I 104, II 33: village-districts, I 40, 42–5: *see also* names of islands, etc.
- Fiji and Tonga, native group-name, I 170
- kings (*tafa'ifa*): first *tafa'ifa*, *see* Salamasina: no group king at time of Tongan war, I 71: holders of the four titles, I 45, 74–5, 76, 80, 437–8, III 107, 163: and independence of Manu'a, *see under* Manu'a: group (except Manu'a) acknowledging, I 45, 74, II 358: not interfering *re* internal affairs, III 104, 107: Malietoa name not necessary to, I 45, 74: not necessarily any *tafa'ifa*, I 74–5: origin of concentration of titles, I 77–80, cf. 437, III 214: "pillars" of, II 443: powers passing from Tonumaipe'a to *tuiaana* line, I 81–2: question of fifth title, I 81: the *tafa'ifa* system, I 437–8: *tafa'ifa* system not understood by Europeans, II 96, III 176–7: titles granted by councils concerned, I 81, III 180 and *notes* 2 and 3: titles making holder sacred, III 214: titles,

INDEX

461

- order of granting, I 81: triple division of rule? I 429: the *tuimanu'a* once kings of all Samoa, I 51, 106–7, 119–20: *see also* *tuiaana*, *tuimanu'a*, etc.
- Sanctity of chiefs, etc.: III 61–96: chiefs carried, III 88 (Fotuna); 86, 129 (Marquesas); 87–8 (Paumotu); 84 (Rarotonga); 73, 74, 75 (Samoa); 79, 80 and *n.* 1, 83–4 (Society); 88 (Tokelau): chiefs living apart (Samoa), III 72–3: chiefs planting, etc. III 74 (Samoa); 328 (Tahiti): chiefs not much respected? (Marquesas), II 396: chiefs not sacred outside own district (Society), I 196, 199, II 72, III 79: chiefs walking and sitting on mats (Marquesas), I 316–17, 323: chiefs not working (Easter Is.), III 362; (Rotuma), I 358, III 361: crawling before chief (Mangaia), I 256: first-born sacred (Mangaia), III 200–1: group and family heads sacred, III 57, 61, 72, 397: hair loosened before chief (Rotuma), I 360: infective taboo (chiefs), III 88–9; (Fiji), III 92; (Marquesas), II 396–7, III 85, 86, 129, 131; (Samoa), II 372, 375, III 72, 73–4, 215; (Society), I 203, III 79–80; (Tonga), III 76–7; (Uvea), III 88: infective taboo (first-born), (Mangaia), III 200: infective taboo (image-bearer), (Society), III 81: infective taboo (priests), III 85, cf. 85–6 (Marquesas); 76 (Tonga): insult to chief atoned for with human victim (Society), III 20: insult to chief entailing banishment, III 11 (Samoa); 17, 20 (Society): insult to chief entailing war (Rotuma), I 360; (Samoa), III 103, 106: kings sometimes killed, I 16–17; (Mangaia), I 16, III 23; (Niue), I 354, III 335; (Tonga), I 143, 153, 158, III 117, 208, 266, *see also* *under* War: kissing feet of chief, etc. (Tonga), II 187, 192, 196: lowering sail before house of *sou* (Rotuma), I 360: persons of chiefs sacred, III 88 (Easter Is.); 92 (Fiji); 84 (Hervey); 86 (Marquesas); 87–8 (Paumotu); 72–3 (Samoa); 77–8, 79–80, 82–4 (Society); 75, 76 (Tonga): persons coming in contact with chiefs, etc. taboo, III 73–4 (Samoa); 80, 82 (Society); 76 (Tonga): persons of image-bearers sacred (Society), II 422, III 81–2, cf. Marquesas, II 430–1: persons of priests sacred, III 85, 86–7 (Marquesas); 87 (Paumotu); 76 (Tonga): sanctity passing to heir, on abdication (Marquesas), III 203, 221–2; (Tahiti), I 203 and *n.* 4, III 220–1, 222–3, 373 *n.* 2, cf. Hao Is. III 222: seclusion of the *atua* (Marquesas), II 428, III 84–5: seclusion of king's heir (Mangareva), III 203–4, cf. Tahiti, I 200: sitting in presence of superior (Tonga), II 187, 195, cf. 413: special door for first-born (Mangaia), III 200: special paths for king, etc. (Mangareva), III 132, cf. Tahiti, I 188: subjects might strike chief? (Marquesas), III 130: taboo restrictions, chieftainship avoided on account of, I 425–6, III 75: titles sanctifying holders, *see under* Titles, etc.: uncovering before chiefs (Tahiti), I 196, III 79, *see also under* Turban: victim bearing name of sacred chief, saved (Marquesas), III 156, 227: *see also* Chief's language, Deification, Divine descent, Eating, and Food of sacred persons
- Sa'oaua* name, (Samoa): derived from ancestress of family ("sister"), I 78, II 98–100: each family having own, II 98–9: held by the *taupou*, II 98, 100, 106, 188, 465, 470: hereditary title, I 78, cf. II 98–100: *taupou* receiving, at time of appointment, II 98, 100, 106: *see also under* names of families
- Saolevao, *see* Salevao
- Satuala f. (Samoa): ancestor *tuiaana* Tamalelangi, II 18–19, III 174: branch at Satapuala founded by marriage there, II 24: a branch of *tuiaana* f. II 18, 465, III 112: branches at Faleasi'u, etc. related to chiefs there, II 23, 24: chief seats, II 19, 23: collecting mats for *tuiaana* title-granting, II 23: family of House of Nine related to? III 174–5: and privy council of *tuiaana*, III 112–13: *sa'oaua* name, II 99: Tauaana f. connected with *tuiaana* through, II 19
- Savai'i: and the *alataua*, I 83, 84, 424: "creation," etc. myths, I 48–9, 89–90: descent of Savai'ians and Manu'ans divine, I 49, 90, 123–4, 138, 139, cf. Tonga, I 136–42, III 65: districts, I 42: division of land, and Ationgie, I 65, III 249–50, 258: division of land, and Lealali, III 249–50, 258: division of land, by Va'asilifiti, I 67, cf. 63: Fiji and, I 116–17, *see also under* Tuifiti: Fiji, Tonga, Manu'a and, connected in myths, I 117, 128–9, cf. 116–17: founded by Lealali and his descendants (Manu'a-Aana), I 59–68, 108: founded by son of Pili (Manu'a), I 58, 59, 60: government of Upolu and, (Lealali), I 61–2, III 172: governmental centres, I 44, 45, II 464: and Manu'an influences, I 106–7, 109, 112: Manu'an-Savai'ian gods known in Tonga, I 115–17: Manu'ans peopling, I 49, 108, 124–5: peopling the Pacific, I 49, 109, 124, 125: priority of, in greeting of Samoa, II 464: and Rarotonga (Karika), I 266–7: stone walls in, II 35, III 249–51, 252–3: and the "Tangaroans," I 88, 108–9, 111, 124–5: pre-"Tangaroans" in, I 68, 94, 125: Tongan-Fijian element in, I 62–8, 108, 125, cf. 109: the Tongan wall in, III 250, cf. 251: the "Tongans" not driven out

- of, I 108, 110–11, 125, 129: the “Tongans” subjecting, I 70–1, 73, cf. 121: *tuitonga* marrying Savai’i woman, II 33, cf. I 104
- Savea Si’uleo (Samoa): ancestor of Tonu-maie’p’a f. I 75, 95, 122, II 33, 319, III 65: brother of Salevao, I 48, 96, II 233, 319: coming from Fiji, I 75, 117: eel incarnation of, II 233, cf. I 104: and eel-sign of Asau (Samoa), II 318, 319: god of the dead, I 48, 75, 95 and n. 1, 116, II 233: god of Puluotu, I 95, 116, II 233, cf. I 127: identical with Tongan Hikuleo, I 48, 95, 116: and Nafanua, I 95, 116, III 252: Tangaroa the father of, I 116: a “Tangaroan” god, I 75, 95, 116, II 233: and the twin girls, I 116–17: and war, III 252: *see also* Hikuleo (Tonga)
- Script (Easter Is.), signatory marks of chiefs, II 328
- tablets (Easter Is.): annual examination *re*, held by king, I 397–8: king visiting local experts, I 398: professors belonging to each clan, I 397: read by king at new or waning moon, etc. I 398: *rongo-rongo* men chanting at time of egg-feast, I 398, 406: understood by chiefs and priests only, I 395, cf. 397
- Sea: “created” by Matariki (Bukabuka), I 383: gods of (Tonga), II 412–13: gods living in or under, II 301 (Ongtong Java); 290 (Rotuma)
- Seating, in assembly house: *alataua*-orators in round part, II 82: chiefs and orator chiefs having own “posts” (Samoa), II 454, 455, 456–7, cf. stones at House of Fe’e, II 474: chiefs at other end of house, facing head chief, II 455, 456, 457 (Samoa); 477 (Tonga): each person in appointed place (Samoa), II 454, 457: head chief in eastern round-part, II 452–3, 454, cf. 455–6: head chief sitting apart (Samoa), II 453, 454, 454–5, 456, 459, cf. III 73; (Tonga), II 477, cf. I 147: head chief with high chiefs beside him (Tonga), II 476–7, 478: left hand of chief seat of honour? II 443 (Samoa); 443, 477, 478–9 (Tonga): owners of seats, “pillars” of state (Samoa), II 84: “pillars,” chiefs and sub-chiefs as, (Mangaia) I 251, II 83, cf. Marquesas, II 84: the “pillars,” councillors sitting left and right of chief (Samoa), II 443, 453, 454, 456, 459, 465, 466, 467, 469, cf. I 63–4 II 31, III 64–5; cf. Rarotonga, II 490, and Tonga, II 478, 480, III 186, 188, 192: “pillars,” gods as posts, etc. of spirit assembly-house (Mangaia), I 251, II 83: “pillars,” *see also* souls of dead as posts in house of god, II 83? (Samoa); 83–4 (Society); 83 (Tonga): right to seat implying right to attend council (Samoa), II 453: seats between posts equivalent to seats outside house (Samoa), II 454: seats between posts, held by minor orators (Samoa), II 454, 457, 458: seats of chiefs, etc. hereditary (Samoa), II 455, 457, cf. 453–4, *see also* II 83, 84: seats indicative of owner’s rank, II 453, 454, cf. 455–7 (Samoa); 477, 478 (Tonga): *taupou* owning a “post” (Samoa), II 106, 457, 458, cf. 453: titles connected with seats? (Samoa) II, 83, 84: *see also* *Marae* as record of rank, social centre, seats in *marae*, under *Marae*
- Seating, outside house or kava ring: chief’s heir sitting outside (Samoa), II 106: general public outside, II 477, 478, III 193, cf. II 413 (Tonga); *see also* Samoa, II 458–9: people in appointed places, II 81 (Bukabuka); 84–5, 454, 459 (Samoa); *see also* II 394 n. 2; 326–7 (Marquesas); 494 (Niue): semi-circle of minor chiefs (Tonga), II 478: youths in front of house (Samoa), II 447
- Seats of chiefs (thrones): head chief on mat-throne (Samoa), II 452, 455, cf. 459: head chief on seat of honour (Samoa), III 73: head chief seated on slaves (Rarotonga), III 84: king’s seat made of tablets (Easter Is.), I 397: king’s seat taboo (Samoa), III 74, cf. Mangareva, III 84: Leulumoenga orators allowed to sit on stools (Samoa), II 13, 459, 465: *see also* *Marae*, seats
- Secret societies, formed by kava people, I 7–8
- Seduction: by chief, culprit killed (Mangaia), II 347: penalty (Tikopia), III 30
- Senga* bird (Samoa): association with Tangaroa, *tufiti* and *tuiamanu’a*, I 99, cf. 104: coveted on account of its *mana*, I 99: exchanged for kava root, I 98, 99, 128: Upolu chiefs endeavouring to secure, I 99
- Servants: *mahoo*, cohabiting with men (Society), II 393: *mahoo*, doing women’s work (Society), II 393: *mahoo*, dressed and treated as women (Society), II 393: *mahoo*, under same taboos as women (Society), II 393: relations and children as, II 371–2, cf. 376 (Samoa); 383 (Tonga): terms for, II 384, 392 (Society): of women, “common” men (Marquesas), II 398, 399: of women, excluded from ceremonies (Society), II 392: of women, the *tuti*, (Society) II 384, 392: of women, young chiefs (Society), II 392
- chief’s “jester” (Samoa), II 372, 373–4: as barber (Samoa), II 372: best shares of food given to, (Society), II 393: as cup-bearer (Samoa), II 372: eating food left by chief (Samoa), II 373–4: licence enjoyed by (Samoa), II 372, 373,

INDEX

463

- 374, cf. Society, II 393: as messenger (Samoa), II 372, cf. "sister's son" as peace envoy *under* Messengers: orator-chiefs, etc. as "jesters" (Samoa), II 376: Salelesi, a chief (Samoa), II 374, 376: Salelesi, "jester" of *tuiatua*, II 373-4: Salelesi, office hereditary, II 373-4: Salelesi, privileges, II 373-4: Salelesi serving one *tuaiana*, II 374: as trumpeter (Samoa), II 372, 372-3 (cf. 375)
- of great chiefs: attendants of king (Mangareva), II 400: bodyguard of *sou* (Rotuma), II 403: councillors as (Tonga), II 380, 382, 383, cf. Samoa, II 372, III 345, *see also under* Servants, chief's "jester": eating food left by chief (Samoa), II 372, 373-4, 375, cf. Marquesas, II 397, 398: feeding chiefs (Society), III 82-3: "fire-maker" sharing chief's wife (Marquesas), II 398 *and n. 2*: keeping up fire at night, II 375-6 (Samoa); 384 (Tonga): office hereditary in family (Samoa), II 372, 373-4, 375, 376: relation feeding king (Ra'iatea), III 83: relation serving winner of egg-race (Easter Is.), I 400: sacred, III 80, 82 (Society), cf. Samoa, III 73: servant and counsellor of *tuaiana* descended from Fonoti, II 375 (cf. 372-3), 376: servant of Malietoa, a chief (Samoa), II 375, 376: servant of *tuiatua*, *see under* chief's "jester" *above*: sharing chief's wife (Marquesas), II 397 *and n. 1*, cf. 398 *and n. 2*: sister's descendants serving chief (Samoa), II 376: special attendants (Samoa), II 372-6: "younger brothers" as, II ? 397 *and n. 1*, cf. 398 *and n. 2* (Marquesas); 376 (Samoa); *see also under* First-born
- Sharks: affording protection (Tonga), II 257, 261: aiding human descendant (Society), II 267, 270: aiding and sparing their priests (Society), II 265, cf. 265-6: aiding Tafa'i (Paumotu), II 288: Atea, the ancestor of, (Marquesas), II 280: best parts due to chiefs, etc. (Samoa), II 243, 244, 311: catching of, II 229, 310 (Samoa): chief taking form of shark (Tonga), II 256: as chief's food, II 229 (Samoa); 265 (Society): chief's rights *re*, (Rarotonga), II 277, 311; (Rotuma), II 289, 312; (Samoa), II 104-5, 244, 311, III 345: coming when called in chief's name (Samoa), II 229: converted king liable to be eaten by, (Tonga), II 256: each family having own, (Huahine), I 239, II 264: eaten without leave of chief, cause of illness (Rotuma), II 289: not eaten by worshipper, II 295 (Manahiki); 229 (Samoa); 259 (Tonga): eating of turtle and, by certain persons, II 312-15: Fatuhuku supported by (Marquesas), I 306-8, II 280: fed and tamed (Huahine), I 239, II 264; (Samoa), II 229: fire for sacred shark (Samoa), II 229: gods incarnate in (Duff), II 302; (Mangaia), II 272; (Ongtong Java), II 301; (Rotuma), II 288, 290; (Samoa), II 219, 220, 229; (Society), I 208, II 266; (Tonga), II 252, 256, 257, 259-60: humans turning into, (Tonga), II 260: images of, taken to sea to procure good catch (Huahine), II 266-7: at inauguration of king (Society), II 265-6: not injuring men near sacred island (Tonga), II 255-6: not injuring worshippers, II 250 (Samoa); 260, 261 (Tonga): inspiring Rongo's priests (Aitutaki), II 271, 278: invoked by family worshipping, (Tonga), II 256, III 50: kept prisoners (Society), II 265, 266: *marae* dedicated to, (Huahine), I 239, II 264, 266: miracles ascribed to, I 239, II 264: mourned by person catching, (Samoa), II 229: named (Huahine), I 239, II 264: with priests and priestesses (Rotuma), II 290, 438: sacred (Niue), II 291: sacred, not killed (Tonga), II 253: sacred species (Marquesas), II 280: sight of, causing death (Rotuma), II 290: spirits returning in, II 306, cf. 267 (Society); 253, 306 (Tonga): stars, etc. associated with, (Society), I 239-40, II 264: swallowing man (Marquesas), II 283: taboo mark in semblance of shark-god (Tonga), II 260: Tahiti as a shark, I 173, II 265: Tane and the Teva shark-god, I 238-41, 243, II 264-5, III 66: and the Teva ancestor-god (Tahiti), I 172-3, II 39, 116, 270, III 66, cf. I 243, 265-6, 307-8: worshipped (Society), I 239, II 264, 266
- Sharks' teeth: emblem of god, as war omen (Samoa), II 250: gods immanent in (Samoa), II 221
- Shell: god immanent in? (Samoa), II 220, 221: *see also* Conch shell
- Siamese-twin goddesses, *see* Taema and Tilafainga
- Sikaiana, succession to kingship, III 384, 395
- Sina (Hina, Ina): connected with origin of tattooing (Mangaia), II 324: connection with Tangaroa, etc. (Samoa), I 51, II 219; (Society), I 219, 220: courting Maui (Paumotu), II 284: daughter of Kui the Blind (Hervey), II 274: daughter of Rongo (Hervey), I 265: violation by eel, *see under* Pili: wife of Pili (Samoa), I 48: wife of Tiki (Paumotu), I 337, II 205, 287
- Sinnet, *see under* Coconut leaves
- Sister: men marrying each other's sisters (Society), II 137: term, II 208 (Bukabuka); 213 (Duff); 206 (Niue); 208 (Penrhyn)
- Sister (m.s.): brother giving best food

- etc. to, (Samoa), II 103, cf. 155: brother present at birth of sister's child (Samoa), II 160: brother protector of, (Samoa), II 102, 103: of chief, speaking in council (Samoa), II 104, 166; cf. *taupou* owning a "post," II 106, 453: consulted by brother *re* land, etc. (Samoa), II 103, 104: deposing brother's heir (Samoa), II 106: duties at funeral of brother (Samoa), II 161-2, 171-2, 194; *see also tuitonga fefine* (Tonga), II 196, 197-8: of head of family, as priestess (Samoa), II 102, 409, III 40: cf. the *tamaha* (Tonga), II 180: influencing choice of brother's associates (Samoa), II 103, 166: owning land? (Rarotonga), III 291-2: privileges connected with matrilineal descent (Samoa), II 105, 162, 166-7, 172, 184-5, 215-16: respect due to, (Samoa), II 102: respect due to, confusion arising from continuance, II 147-8: respect due to elder sister and posterity, observed by villages (Samoa), I 67-8: respect for eldest sister, II 154-5 (Samoa); 110, 154 *n.* 4, cf. 154-5, 181, cf. 183 (Tonga): *sa'oualuma* name derived from? (Samoa), I 78, II 98-100: "sisters" present when "brothers" tattooed (Samoa), II 160-1: succession by, (Tonga), II 112-13, III 371: succession by brothers and sisters (Uvea), III 382: succession by, as first-born, *see under* First-born: succession rights, bought by "death"-mat, etc.? (Samoa), II 94-5, 97-8, 100, 110-11, 167, 169, 170-1, cf. 96-7: succession rights, waived by *tuitonga fefine*? (Tonga), II 111-12, 113, III 216, 369: term, II 204, 215 (Paumotu); 143, 207, 215 (Rotuma); ? 200 (Rarotonga); 151, 214 (Samoa); 199, 215 (Society); 180, 214-15 (Tonga): term applied to "cousins," etc. (Samoa), II 103, 151, 160, cf. 99 *and n.* 1: term applied to father's sister? (Samoa), II 125, cf. 103: term applied to father's sister's daughter (Samoa), II 126: term for elder sister? (Society), II 199: term used classificatorily, II 151 (Samoa); 180 (Tonga): *see also the Taupou* (Samoa); *the Tamaha, and Tuitonga fefine* (Tonga)
- (w.s.), Elder sister (w.s.), etc., terms, *see under* Brother (m.s.), sister (w.s.), etc.
- Sister-and-brother avoidance, etc.: brother a stranger to sister (Fotuna), II 207: "brother" not using indecent word before "sister," II 160, cf. New Hebrides, II 213, Uvea, II 207-8: "brother" not watching "sister" dance (Samoa), II 160: no conversation restrictions between relations (Hervey), II 201: decorum of sister and brother in each other's presence (Samoa), II 160: improper for brothers and sisters to see each other in undress (New Hebrides), II 213; cf. Uvea, II 207: indelicate gestures, etc. taboo in presence of brothers and sisters (Samoa), II 159-60: man not entering house of eldest sister, (Tonga) II 110, 181: restraints extending to cousins, etc. (Samoa), II 160, cf. Uvea, II 207-8: sister not crossing brother's path (Penrhyn), II 208: sister and brother not embracing (Penrhyn), II 208, cf. Hervey, II 201: sister and daughter of "friend" taboo to *taio* (Society), II 200
- — bond (Samoa): II 96-7, 102-3: affecting cousins, etc. II 103: called *ilamutu*, II 152, 153, cf. 177: called *tamasa*, II 152: descendants observing, II 102-3, 103-4, cf. 152, 153, 177: descended groups observing, I 67-8, II 103-4, cf. 336-7
- — marriages: and father's curse (Samoa), II 126-7: in myths of gods, II 202-3 (Marquesas); 206 (Niue); 205 (Paumotu); 181-2 (Tonga); *see also* Pili violating sister (Samoa), II 234: regarded with horror (Niue), II 206: sometimes occurring, II 200; 202 (Marquesas); 201 (Rarotonga): taboo (Marquesas), II 202
- of wife, *see* Wife's sister
- Sister-in-law: term for, II 205 (Paumotu); 119 (Society); cf. Tonga, II 179: *see also* relationship between sisters-in-law (Tikopia), II 210
- — (w.s.), etc. *see under* Brother-in-law (m.s.), etc.
- Sister's child (children), m.s.: consulted by family head *re* land (Samoa), II 104, III 243: named by mother's brother (Hervey), II 201: office at mother's brother's funeral (Samoa), II 162, 171-2, 194: payments due from brother's children to, (Banks), II 170-1: politeness due from brother's children to, (Samoa), II 160 *and n.* 2: powers connected with matrilineal descent (Samoa), II 162, 173, 215-16: specially honoured if sister older than brother (Tonga), II 183: taking property of mother's brother, II 153 (Samoa); 182 (Tonga): and term *fahu* (Tonga), II 180, 182 *and n.* 3: and term *ilamutu*, II 177, 202 (Marquesas); 152-3, 177, 193 (Samoa); 177, 180 (Tonga): and term *tamasa*, etc. II 152-3, 175-6, 177, 193 (Samoa); 182, cf. 180-1 (Tonga)
- — curse (m.s.): causing barrenness in brother's family (Samoa), II 101: causing death in brother's family (Samoa), II 101, cf. 94-5, 103: claims of sister, sister's son, etc. submitted to through fear of, (Samoa), II 101, 154, 156, 167, 169, 185, cf. 97: disastrous to brother

INDEX

465

- (Samoa), II 97, 101: sister's cursing powers, and matrilineal descent, II 101-2: *see also* anger of god on failure of respect to sister (Samoa), II 161
- daughter: called *iamutu* (Marquesas), II 202: term for (Bukabuka), II 208
- (m.s.): called "niece" (New Hebrides), II 213: mother's brother marrying (myth), Tonga, I 117: mother's brother not marrying? (Samoa), II 125, cf. 128-9: mother's brother's office at menstruation rite, (Marquesas) II 203: mother's brother sharing presents at marriage of (Tikopia), II 211: office at funeral of mother's brother (Tonga), II 193-4 (tree, 191), cf. 195-6: taking goods of mother's brother (Tonga), II 183, cf. Niue, II 122, 206-7
- (w.s.), called "daughter," II 213 (New Hebrides); 150 (Samoa)
- descendants (m.s.): acting as kava chewers (Samoa), II 99: as attendants of chiefs (Samoa), II 376: "death"-mats due from brother's descendants to, (Samoa), II 95-6, 98, 167-8: deposing brother's heir (Samoa), II 106: influence over brother's descendants (Samoa), II 97, 104, 105, 166-7: sister-and-brother bond continued *re*, (Samoa), II 102-3, 103-4, cf. 152, 153, 177: and terms *ilamutu* and *tamasa* (Samoa), II 152-3
- husband (m.s.): relationship between wife's brother and (Tikopia), II 210: respect paid by brother to (Samoa), II 103: term for, applied to wife's brother (Tonga), II 181
- son (m.s.): claims submitted to, for fear of sister's curse (Samoa), II 97, 154, 167, 169, 185: influence in family matters (Samoa), II 97, 104, cf. 105, 166-7: intercourse with, unrestricted (Tonga), II 182: mat-giving to sister, a "buying out" of claim of, (Samoa), II 167, 169, 170-1: mats given to, (Samoa), II 156, 168: mother's brother at ceremonies affecting, II 203-4 (Marquesas); 211, 212 (Tikopia); cf. Tonga, II 182: mother's brother digging grave of, (Tikopia), II 211: mother's brother helping, (Melanesia), II 168: mother's brother kissing feet of, (Tonga), II 197, 198: mother's brother nursing? (Samoa), II 155, 172: mother's brother servant to (Tonga), II 182: mother's brother's son marrying wife of? (Samoa), II 155: not obeying mother's brother, II 211 (Tikopia); 182 (Tonga): part of turtle due to? (Samoa), II 243, 311: privileges of *vasu* extending to his relatives (Fiji), II 176: rights confined to son of eldest sister? (Samoa), II 154-5, 181 *n.* 12: rights of, and matrilineal descent (Samoa), II 167-8, 169-71, 172-3: rights over mother's brother's people (Fiji), II 159, 176: rights over mother's brother's wife? (Samoa), II 153-4: "sacred gift" to, (Samoa) II 155: and selection of mother's brother's heir (Samoa), II 97: not succeeding (Banks), II 170; (Tikopia), III 384: succession by (Duff), II 213; (New Hebrides), III 386; (Samoa), II 89-90, 100-1, 134, III 176, 366; succession by, and purification of *tuitonga fefine* (Tonga), II 111-12, 113, III 216, 369: taking mother's brother's goods, II 168, 170 (Banks); 213 (Duff); 168 (Fiji); 153, 154, 156-7 (Samoa); 168 (Vanikolo); 182 (Tonga); cf. New Guinea, II 169; Reef Is. II 168-9; Tikopia, II 211: termed *ilamutu*, II 202 (Marquesas); 152-3, cf. 177 (Samoa); 177, 210 (Tikopia); 177, 180 (Tonga): termed *tamafafine* (Samoa), II 152-3: termed *tamasa*, II 152-3, 175-7 (Samoa); 152, cf. 180-1 (Tonga): termed *vasu*, II 176-7 (Fiji); cf. 180, 182 (Tonga): Ulamasui aiding maternal uncles (Samoa), II 25: under protection of mother's people (Samoa), II 85-6, 336: in war-time, envoy to mother's people, II 176 (Fiji); 157, 176 (Samoa), *see also* chief's "jester" as messenger, II 372; *also* Marquesas, II 350, relations of enemy as envoys: in war-time, privileges (Samoa), II 156-7, 336, *see also* 157-9, 331-2: *see also* Father's sister's son
- (w.s.), called "son," II 213 (New Hebrides); 178 (Tonga)
- son's descendants (m.s.), taking goods of mother's brother's descendants (Tonga), II 182
- Sitting in presence of superior (Tonga), II 187, 195, cf. 413
- Si'uleo, *see* Savea Si'uleo
- Six, divisions of groups into (Nukuhiva), II 49
- Skulls: clan marks on (Easter Is.), II 327, cf. I 396: of enemies (Marquesas), II 351: of enemies, at *marae*, I 260 (Mangaia); 220 (Society): gods immanent in (Samoa), II 221: used to procure fertility (Easter Is.), I 396: worshipped (Ellice), I 378
- Sky: created by Tane (Tahiti), I 244: each group having own, (Marquesas), I 312-13: future home of kava people, I 7, 302: pressing on earth, Tane, etc. coming forth (Marquesas), I 306-7, cf. Paumotu, I 338-9: separation from earth by Mau'i (Ra'iatea), I 184
- raising of: by eel (Ellice), II 232: by Maui, I 302, II 232: by Tane (Paumotu), I 339: by Tii-tii (Samoa), II 232 *and n.* 3: by Tui-te'e-langi (Samoa), II 232: *see also* Tangaroa keeping sky up (Paumotu), I 339
- Slain, heads cut off (Samoa), II 305, 321

- Slaves: criminals used as (Tonga), II 381: as human victims, II 399–400 (Marquesas); 392 (Society): prisoners used as, III 138; (Easter Is.), II 403 (Marquesas), II 399–400; (Niue), II 402; (Paumotu), I 337, II 400; (Samoa), II 371; (Society), II 392; (Tonga), II 381: terms for, II 384 (Society); 379, 381 (Tonga)
- Snake: coconut derived from head of (New Hebrides), II 303: entered by gods, sacred (Tonga), II 252: entered by spirits of dead, II 307 (Rotuma); 253 (Tonga): gods incarnate in, II 233 (Fiji); 303 (New Hebrides); 259 (Tonga): incised on arms of natives (New Hebrides), II 303: people putting snakes round necks (Fotuna), II 292, cf. Tonga, II 253: persons killing, attacked by worshippers (Tonga), II 253: serpents revered, not killed (Rotuma), II 289: Tangaroa as eel or, II 303 (New Hebrides): “Tangaroan” gods associated with eel, lizard and, I 220; (Hervey), II 273–5; (New Hebrides), II 303; (Samoa), I 104, II 231–5; (Society), I 220, II 267; (Tonga), II 253: terror of dead snake (New Hebrides), II 303
- Society Islands: ancient eminence of Ra’iatea, I 212, 215: and divisions into eight, I 181–2, II 41, *see also* I 183–4, II 138, 265: group names, I 170: peopling of, by Ra’iatea, I 211–12, cf. 219: *see also names of islands*
- So’oa’emaleangi (Samoa): cousin (“sister”) of *tuiaana*, I 76, 78, II 99 *n. 1*: and government of Aana, I 79–80: living in Aana, I 78, II 99 *n. 1*: passing titles to Salamasina, I 80: the *sa’oaualuma* name of the *tuiaana* f., II 99 and *n. 1*, 465: wife of *tuiaua*, I 76
- Son: (m.s. and w.s.) different terms used, II 149–50 (Samoa); 178 (Tonga); *see also under* Child belonging to either parent, and *under* Daughter: relations with mother (Penrhyn), II 208: by secondary wife, living in mother’s f. (Samoa), II 27, 29, 158–9: son living with mother’s people (Samoa), II 24, 33: term for, II 212 (Duff); 201 (Marquesas); 205 (Niue); 204 (Paumotu); 200 (Rarotonga); 149, 150 (Samoa); 199 (Society); 178 (Tonga): term used classificatorily (Tonga), II 178, cf. Samoa, II 149
- (adopted), term (Paumotu), II 204
- Son-in-law: living with mother-in-law’s family, etc. (Samoa), II 108–9, *see also under* Husband: same term used for daughter-in-law and, II 202 (Marquesas); 206 (Niue); 200 (Society); ? 210 (Tikopia): terms for, II 205 (Paumotu); 151–2 (Samoa); 210 (Tikopia)
- Sorcerers: able to injure men (Paumotu), II 437: not attaining to priesthood (Paumotu), II 437: conniving with priests (Society), II 421: consulted *re* sickness (Samoa), II 407: the dead instructing priests and, (Paumotu) II 436–7: discovering thief (Samoa), II 407, cf. Rarotonga, III 24: dreams interpreted by, (Paumotu), II 437: feared and avoided (Society), II 418: and inspiration (Society), II 422–3: king as sorcerer (Society), III 34: low class men (Paumotu), II 437: lower class priests? II 405–6; (Hervey), II 425: office hereditary (Hervey), II 426: office passing to nephew (Hervey), II 426: priests distinguished from, (Society), II 418: sorcery practised by priests and, (Society), II 418; *see also* II 439 (Easter Is.); 428, 429, 432 (Marquesas): sorcery practised by priests and individuals (Marquesas), II 432: term *tohunga*, etc. applied to priests and, II 407–8: terms for, II 425 (Hervey); 433 (Paumotu): tolerated by priests (Paumotu), II 437: *see also* II 405–6, magical element in religion
- Sorceress, office hereditary (Hervey), II 426
- Staff: insignia of chief, II 433 (Paumotu); 337 (Samoa): insignia of orator (Samoa), I 58, II 442, 459, 460, 469, 470
- Stars: consultation of, by priests (Society), II 419: god immanent in, (Samoa), II 221: *orero* as astronomers (and navigators), Society, II 423: Ra associated with, (Society), I 245: stealing of, (Society), II 269: Tane associated with, (Mangaia) II 43, 271–2; (Society) I 245, 239–40, II 264
- Stones (and rocks): as actual gods, II 289 (Rotuma); 242–3 (Samoa): emblems of gods, etc. (Mangaia), I 252; (Samoa), II 220, 221, 242; (Tokelau), II 293; (Tonga), II 252: emblems of Tangaroa (Samoa), II 219: help obtained from, (Samoa), II 250: man originating from, *see under* Man, origin of: offerings to, (Fotuna), III 38; (Rotuma), II 289; (Samoa), II 246: rocks raising tempest (Rotuma), II 289: rocks smeared with turmeric (Rotuma), II 289: spirits returning in form of (Samoa), II 304: stone moved by Tuna, etc. (Samoa), I 72: stone walls, *see under* Walls: stones at *marae*, *see under* Inauguration, and *Marae*, seats: swearing innocence by (Samoa), III 5–6: as war omens (Samoa), II 250
- Strangers: hostility towards, cf. reception of banished chiefs (Samoa), III 10: killed (Mangareva), I 334, cf. Mangaia, I 258, 259–60: kings warding island from “spirits” (Mangaia), I 254, 255: night-watch kept for fear of? (Society), II 422: quarantine rites (Ellice), I 378: road

INDEX

467

- taboo to strangers during *fono* (Samoa), II 458: theft from (Society), III 21, 22: *see also* night fires for chiefs, II 375–6 (Samoa); 384 (Tonga)
- (adopted “friends”): adopting “friend,” III 156–7; 158–9 (Duff); 158 (Marquesas); 157 (Samoa); 159 (Sikiana); 157–8 (Society); 157 (Tonga): adoption permanent or temporary? III 157, 158, 159, 160–1: coconut-trees allotted to “friends,” Penrhyn, III 281, 319, cf. Niue, III 281: “friend” called *ikoa* (Marquesas), III 158, cf. *hoa*, Society, I 195, II 385, 386: “friend” called *ofa* (Tonga), III 157: “friend” called *taio* (*tayo*), III 158 (Marquesas); 157, cf. II 200, 385, 386–7 (Society): “friend” giving support in war (Marquesas), III 158: “friend” as husband of name-friend’s wife (Marquesas), III 158, 160, cf. Tahiti, II 200: “friend” protected (Tonga), III 157: “friend” regarded as member of family of person giving name, III 158, 160 (Marquesas); 157, 160 (Tonga), cf. Tahiti, II 200: “friend” using land of *taio* (Society), III 376: “friend’s” right to share food, III 270, 271: inheritance by “friend” (Tahiti), I 195, III 376, cf. Rotuma, III 311, 312–13, *and* Samoa, III 207, 365–6: wants of “friend” provided for (Tonga), III 157: woman having man “friend,” III 158 (Society); 157 (Tonga): *see also* Adoption, *and* “Clans,” and unrelated families
- (visitors, etc.): chief arranging for reception of, (Society), III 19: districts of “relations” alone visited (Tahiti), I 196, II 72, cf. I 199, III 79; cf. Marquesas, II 350, Samoa, II 84–5, 330–1: emigrants, etc. joining kinsmen in other parts (Samoa), III 5; (Tahiti), II 66: exile going to relations (Samoa), III 9: food for, *see* Food for guests: insults to travellers punished (Samoa), III 12, cf. Niue, II 493: permission to travel obtained from superior (Tonga), III 118: present given by host to? (Marquesas), III 359: present for hosts from, (Samoa), III 324: visits of chiefs formal (Tonga), II 382
- Succession: by adopted son, *see under* Adoption: alternate, association with succession by brother, I 437, III 393–4: alternating between certain families, etc. I 430–7; (Funafuti), I 378–80, 430, 431, III 206, 383, 393; (Samoa), III 183–4, cf. 180, 393; (Society), ? I 214, 430, III 394; (Tikopia), III 384–5, 393, 394; (Tonga), I 148, 150, 432–6, III 186, 189, 193–4, 389, 393; cf. Fiji, I 343, 430, *and* Fakaofu, I 373, 376, III 382, 395: by brother (Easter Is.), III 384; (Fotuna), I 364, III 382, 391; (Funafuti), I 379–80, cf. III 383; (Hervey), III 390, 391; (Samoa), II 89, III 365, 366, 387; (Sikiana), III 384, 395; (Society), III 375, cf. 376, 394; (Tonga), I 155, 169, III 370, 371, 389: by brother, or eldest of family (Rotuma), III 381, 391, 395: by brother (if no heir), (Samoa), III 366, cf. *usoali’i*, II 377; (Society), III 374, 375, 376, 389; (Tikopia), III 384; (Tonga), III 369–70: by brother, the older custom (Tonga), III 371, 389, 392, cf. Samoa, II 89: by brother (or son), Funafuti, III 383; (Mangareva), III 380, 391; (Rotuma), III 391; (Samoa), II 89; (Tikopia), III 384: by brothers, and reversion to son of eldest brother (Mangaia), III 200–1, 377, 379, cf. 377–8, 394–5; (Ongtong Java)? III 385; (Rotuma), ? III 381; (Samoa), I 431–2, III 393; (Tonga), I 433, cf. 434–5, III 368, cf. 370–71; (Uvea), III 382: by children, III 383, 391 (Ellice); 203 (Marquesas); 391 (Tokelau): collateral and lineal, III 386–95: by collaterals (Funafuti), III 316; (Marquesas), I 319, 324, III 380, 390; (Ongtong Java), III 391; (Tonga), 368–9, 371, cf. II 112–13; (Uvea), III 382, 391: by collaterals, effect on date question, I 15–16: by daughter’s son, etc. (Samoa), II 90: disinheritance of son (Samoa), III 367: disputes *re*, (Samoa) III 3, 178, 181, cf. II 95; (Tonga), III 189, 191, 192 *and* *n.* I, 194: disputes *re*, settled by council (Samoa), III 3, 181; (Tahiti), III 387: from father to son, abdication to secure? (Society), III 196, 372: from father to son (great chiefs), (Easter Is.), III 383–4, 391, cf. I 394, 396, 401–2; (Hervey), I 277, 282, III 377, 390, 391–2; (Marquesas), I 319, 324, III 380; (New Hebrides), III 386; (Paumotu), I 326, III 204, 380, 391; (Samoa), III 387–8, 391–2; (Tikopia), III 384, 391; (Tonga), III 186, 188, 389, 392, cf. I 148, 154: from father to son, more modern (Tonga), III 389, 392: from father to son (“priests,” minor chiefs), (Mangaia), I 254, 377, 389; (Niue), II 122, 206, 207, III 381, 391; (Tonga), II 380, III 370: after father’s death (Samoa), II 153, cf. 100, 106; (Tonga), II 380, 411, *see also* Mangaia, III 200–1, 373: in father’s life-time, *see* Abdication, *and also* Samoa (*taupou*), II 100, 106, 188: by father’s sister’s son (Samoa), II 90, III 367: by first-born, *see under* First-born: gods interested in candidate, III 218–20; 201, 219–20 (Mangaia); 225–6 (Rotuma); 215, 219, cf. 223–5 (Samoa); 223–4 (Society): by heir with oratorical powers (Samoa), III 367: hereditary among kava people, I 8: by member of family (minor chiefs, etc.), (Rarotonga),

30–2

- III 202; (Rotuma), III 204–5, cf. 212; (Samoa), II 90, 372, III 3, 176, 181, 365, 366–7; (Society), II 42, 388, III 377, 389, 392: by member of special family (great chiefs), III 396–7; (Fiji), I 346, 420; (Fotuna), I 363, cf. 366–7, 421, III 205; (Mangaia), I 255–6, 258, 419; (Mangareva), III 380; (Rotuma), II 54, 205, 225; (Samoa), II 14, III 170, 180, 183–4, 387–8, 392; (Tokelau), I 373, 376, III 382, 395; (Tonga), I 148, 418, III 186, 187–90, 268, 368–9, 370, 371, 389, 392; (Uvea), I 370, cf. 371–2, II 363–4: by nephew (Hervey), II 426; (Mangareva), II 380, 391; (Samoa), III 40, 365; (Society), III 375; (Tonga), III 370: to office, hereditary (Society), II 418; *see also* under Councillors, Food, Rulers of, Priests, Servants of great chiefs, Sorcerers: to “office” of kingship, etc. *see under special titles and islands*: by oldest male of family, etc. *see under* Old people: patrilineal, II 170 (Melanesia); 96 (Samoa): qualifications necessary for, (Samoa), III 367: by relation (Ongtong Java), I 414; (Paumotu), III 204, 391; (Samoa), III 166, 170; (Society), III 231, 376–7: by sister of deceased (Tonga), II 112–13, III 371: by sister’s son, *see under* Sister’s son (m.s.): by son (Funafuti), III 213; (Ongtong Java), III 385; (Rotuma), III 381; (Samoa), II 90, III 170, 176; (Society), III 231, 376–7: by son by principal wife (Samoa), III 166, 179–80, 215, 367–8; (Tonga), II 110, 185–6, 188, III 230, 369, 370: strangers as heirs, *see under* Strangers (adopted “friends”): unfit candidates rejected (Samoa), III 367; (Tonga), I 148, III 188; cf. Mangaia, III 201, and Mangareva, III 380: use of term in book, II 87–8, III 364: by wife? (Marquesas), III 380: by women, III 395; (Bukabuka), I 383; (Ellice), III 383; (Hervey), III 379; (Marquesas), III 380; (New Hebrides), III 386; (Paumotu), III 381; (Samoa), II 96, III 366; (Society), III 197, 371–2, 374; *see also under* First-born: women holding office, *see also* Salamasina (Samoa): *see also* Election, Title-granting, etc. and Wills
— and inheritance, III 368–95; 383–4 (Easter Is.); 383 (Ellice); 382 (Fotuna); 377–9 (Hervey); 380 (Marquesas); 386 (New Hebrides); 381 (Niue); 385–6 (Ongtong Java); 380–1 (Paumotu); 381–2 (Rotuma); 365–8 (Samoa); 384 (Sikaiana); 371–7 (Society); 384–5 (Tikopia); 382–3 (Tokelau); 368–71 (Tonga); 382 (Uvea)
Sun: associated with great chiefs? III 84 (Mangaia); 74 (Samoa); 76 (Tonga): Atea associated with, I 266 *n.* 1; (Marquesas), I 308 *n.* 1, cf. 306–7: created by Tane (Tahiti), I 244: devouring men (Samoa), I 50–1: going too fast (Samoa), I 50: Tangaroa associated with (Samoa), I 50, 51
Taboo: announced by priest (Society), II 420: articles tabooed through name of dead or living (Marquesas), III 159–60, 227–8: the basis of law, III 25 (Marquesas); 22 (Rarotonga): coconut-water, etc. as conductor, *see* Anointment, and Bathing under Inauguration; *also* Samoa, II 239, warriors sprinkled before war: coconut-water, etc. as conductor, in imposing or removing, III 215–16, 227; (Samoa), II 111, III 208, 216, 218: coconut-water, term for sprinkling (Samoa), III 216: crime an infringement of, (Tonga), II 340, III 15: food-tabooing, *see under* Food supply, etc.: food taboos, *see under* Eating, and Food of sacred persons, etc.: general, observed by chiefs under chief imposing (Tahiti), I 188: imposed by council (Samoa), III 241, 323–4: imposed by individual, III 257; 159, 333 (Marquesas); 342 (Tikopia): imposed by king, chiefs, III 98, 398; (Fotuna), III 340, cf. 361; (Marquesas), III 129, 331, 332–3; (Rarotonga), ? III 330; (Samoa), III 324; (Society), I 186, 187–8, II 117, III 280, 328–9; (Tikopia), III 341, 342, 363; (Tonga), III 326; (Uvea), I 371: imposed in name of god (Marquesas), III 159–60: imposed by priests (Marquesas), II 429, III 332–3; (Paumotu), III 334: imposed by Tubu (Tonga), I 153, 429, III 324–5: incantation on imposing, (Tahiti) III 329: involving person imposing, (Marquesas), III 333: persons of chiefs taboo, *see under* Sanctity of chiefs: *rahui* for chiefs’ heirs (Society), I 186, 187–8, II 117: removal of, piece of wood struck (Society), III 329: removal of, pigs taken to king, III 329, 357 (Society); 326 (Tonga): removal of, term (Society), III 329: removed by councillors (Samoa), III 324: removed by king or chief, III 340 (Fotuna); 328 (Tahiti); 326 (Tonga): removed from turtle by king? II 293 (Fotuna); 294 (Funafuti); 287 (Paumotu), 294–5 (Tongareva): sex taboo (Society), II 393, 425; sex taboo, applying to certain men, II 398–9 (Marquesas); 393 (Society): sex taboo, chief performing ceremonies not entering house of women (Marquesas), II 282, III 37, cf. Paumotu, II 286: taboos connected with office (Easter Is.), I 400, 405, cf. Rotuma, *sou*, I 358: taboos, office not accepted on account of, I 425–6; (Samoa), I 426, III 75: not violated

INDEX

469

- (Marquesas), III 331: violation angering gods (Fotuna), III 340: violation causing illness (Tikopia), III 342: water removing, (Marquesas), III 217; (Samoa), II 111, cf. II 101, removing curse by water; (Tonga), II 111–12, III 216
— sign: coconut leaf in semblance of shark-god (Tonga), II 260, cf. Mangaia, III 289, coconut frond representing chief: coconut leaves, connection with Nafanua (Samoa), II 241, 320 *and n. 2*: penalty for disregarding, (Society), III 20; (Tonga), II 260: set on trees (Society), III 20, 280
- Taama and Tilafainga (Samoa, etc.): connection with Nafanua, I 116 (Samoa); cf. 116–17 (Tonga): connection with Savea Si'uleo, I 116 (Samoa); cf. 116–17 (Tonga): of Fijian or Manu'an origin (Samoa), I 116: Siamese twins, I 116 (Samoa), cf. 117 (Tonga): and tattooing (Samoa), I 116: in Tongan myths, I 116–17: and Tutuila *falatele* (Samoa), II 453–4
- Tafa'i: and shark ancestor (Society), II 267, 270, 288: sharks aiding (Paumotu), II 288: and Ui the blind, II 288 (Paumotu); 267 (Society)
- Tahaa (Society): conquered by Puni, I 215: Mannemanne dominant in, I 216: and Ra'iatea, I 215, 217
- Tahiti: areas I 171–81: and Atiu, I 295, 298: as a cuttlefish? I 183–4, II 265: districts (large peninsula), I 173–4, 177, 178, 180–1, 182, 183: districts (small peninsula), I 174–6: divisions (large peninsula), I 173–4, 177–8, 179–81, 190: divisions (small peninsula), I 174–7, 179, 180: as an eel, I 211, 220, 235, 236, II 267: Hawaiki identified with, I 218, cf. 20, 170: Mangaian clans deriving from, I 240, 260, 261, 271, 272: and Manu'a, I 103, 221, 230, 231–2: *marae*, *see special names under Marae*: Maui fishing up island of, I 173: native name for, I 170: Ra'iatean connections with, I 230, 231, 233–4, 235–6: Ra'iatean origin of natives of, I 173, 211–12, 220, 235, 267, III 279: and Rarotonga, I 234–6, 267, 280: as a shark, I 173, II 265: Tane as creator of? I 244: Tangaroans in, I 229–33, 233–6: Tu as creator of (Paumotu), I 241 *n. 2*
— kings: different chiefs suzerains at different times, I 184–6: no king over whole island, I 171 *and n. 4*, 192 *n. 5*, 203, 206–7, 208, II 341–2: Pomare II first king of whole island, I 171, 192 *n. 5*, 209, cf. 201–2: *see also* Pomare I *and* Pomare II, the Teva, Papara chiefs, *and* Vehiatua
- Tahuata (Marquesas): areas, I 316: king over island, I 316, 318, 320, 322, 323
- Taio*: terms *hoa* and, (Society), II 385, 386–7: *see also* Strangers (adopted “friends”)
- Tai-pii-nui-a-Vaku, (Nukuhiva): allies of, I 309: area, I 304, 309, 310, 313, 314, 315: chiefs and government, I 309, 320, III 129, 131: divine descent of chiefs, I 314: linguistic peculiarities, I 303, 304, 315, cf. II 46: power and importance, I 308–9: sacred eel of, I 306, 309, II 281: special sky, I 313: subdivisions, I 309–10: and Tei group, descendants of brothers, I 314–15, II 46–7: and Tei, intermarrying, II 350–1
- Taisumalie (Samoa): animal incarnations, II 240, 242: of human origin, II 239: illness cured through? II 239–40: incarnate in member of family, etc. II 239–40: inspiring head of her family, etc. II 239–40: plant emblems worn in battle, II 242: as war-god (goddess), II 239, cf. 242: worshipped in Upolu and Savai'i, II 239
- Tai-te-ariki, *see under* Pa
- Tamaha* (Tonga): curing the sick, II 187, 189: daughter of *tuitonga fefine*, II 187, 188: divine origin, II 198: female of highest rank, II 181, 189, 190: high rank and sanctity, II 181, 187, 198: importance connected with matrilineal descent, II 189–90: Mariner's ignorance *re*, II 194–5: offerings brought to, II 187, 189: as priestess, II 180, 188, 189: taking precedence of chiefs, II 198: term applied to father's sister? (Faka Kana), II 196, 197–8 (tree, 191): term applied to father's sister and her children? II 192–3 (tree, 191): term applied to sister's child? II 182, 187–8, 189: term mainly applied to female, II 188, 189–90: term, meaning, II 180–1: *tui-kanokubolu* doing homage to, II 198: and *tuitonga* of different generations, II 190: *tuitonga* doing homage to, II 187
- Tamaha* (*tamasa*), applied to Father's sister, Father's sister's daughter, Father's sister's son, Sister-and-brother bond, Sister's child, Sister's descendants, Sister's son, *see under those titles*
- Tamasoali'i title (Samoa): connection with Ngatoaitale title, I 76–7, 81: granted by Safata (orator-chiefs), I 76–7, 81, III 47, cf. I 424: Nafanua acquiring, I 79: origin, I 76: origin, date, I 77: not originally important, I 77: “pillars” of holder of, II 443: a *tafa'ifa* title, I 74, 76: a Tuamasanga title, I 74, 76–7
- Tane: later than Maui, I 302: not appearing in Samoan and Tongan legends, I 91: pre-Tangaroan god, I 90–1, 96
— (Hervey Is.), Iro at house of, II 278
— (Hervey, Mangaia): axe emblem of, II 427: bird and fish incarnations, II 43, 271: date of arrival, I 240: descriptive names for, II 271, cf. 427: *marae* built

- for, I 240: having *marae* with skulls, I 260: the Mautara originally worshipping, I 259, II 272: places where worshipped, II 43, 271: priests of, II 426: a refugee god from Tahiti, I 240: sinnet-work symbol of, II 43, 272: stars connected with, II 43, 271-2: Tane clan chief selected by? III 201, 219: the Tane clan worshipping, I 240, 260, II 271, 272: tree associated with, II 271
- (Hervey, Rarotonga): brother of Rongo, Tu and Tangaroa, I 266: and Makea title, I 266: son of Atea, I 266
- (Marquesas): ancestor of chiefs, III 70: and migration to Marquesas, I 30-1, 341: and separation of sky from earth, etc. I 306-7: and shark-god of Fatahuku, I 307-8
- (Paumotu), a pre-Tangaroan god, I 340-2
- (Paumotu, Anaa): god of fertility, I 340
- (Paumotu, Hao and Makemo): a chief god, I 339-40: raising sky, I 339
- (Paumotu, Takoto and Fangatau): killing Atea, I 338-9, cf. 341: master of heaven and earth, I 339, cf. 340: master of life, I 340: prayed to on birth of child, I 340: prayed to at weddings, I 340: sky raised by, I 339: son of earth and sky, I 338: Tangaroa an ally of, I 339 *and n.* 8
- (Society): cult superseded by Tangaroa-Oro cult, I 245-9: *marae* less numerous than those of Oro, I 247: name of highest heaven associated with, I 245: tail of, comet or stars, I 245: as a war god, I 245: at war with Oro, I 245-6
- (Society, Borabora): connected with Milky Way, I 239-40, II 264: connected with rainbow, I 246: superseded by Oro, I 246
- (Society, Eimeo), superseded by Oro, I 246
- (Society, Huahine): conveying ancestors of chiefs to island, I 215: and the eight district gods, I 214-15, 238-9, II 41: the eight sons of, I 238: image annually re-decorated, I 182, III 81-2: image-bearer, II 414, III 81-2: *marae*, *see* Marae (Huahine), Mata'i-rea: retaining pre-eminence, I 247, 249: and shark cult, I 239, II 264, 266: temple of? III 81-2: tutelar god of island, I 215, 238, 246, 249, cf. 237
- (Society, Ra'iatea), and rainbow-worship, I 246
- (Society, Tahaa): Auroa *marae* originally dedicated to, I 246: and rainbow worship, I 246: superseded by Oro, I 246
- (Society, Tahiti): "creator" god, I 244: cult absent in non-Teva districts, I 237-8, 240-1: highest god, I 237, cf. 246: human sacrifice to, I 246-7, cf. 240: image conveying Oro to Tautira, I 208, 238, 243: *marae* near Oro-*marae*, final receptacles of victims, I 246-7: Oro superseding, I 246-7: a principal god, I 237, 243-4: and shark-gods, I 238-41, 243, II 264-5, III 66: Tangaroa less often invoked than, I 247: and Tangaroa, the original gods, I 243, 244, 249, cf. 237: Tangaroa as wife of, I 244: Tangaroa's apparent superiority over, I 245: the Teva god? I 236-41, 243-4, II 264-5, III 66: Teva high priest praying to, I 238, 240-1: as wind god, I 238, cf. 244: worship of, in Teva districts, I 240
- clan (Mangaia), *see* Aitu clan
- Tangaroa: in Fiji, a living chief? I 115: as Fijian god (Paumotu), I 129: as Fijian king (Paumotu), I 103-4, 113, 122: Fijian pantheon not including, I 112-15: a god of later creed, I 91, 122, 125, 302: the god of the "Tangaroans," I 30, 88, 94, 121-2, 218, 222, 232, 332: (Paumotu), I 341; (Rarotonga), I 272; (Samoa), I 118-30; (Tahiti), I 249, cf. 221-2
- (Ellice), name avoided, III 95
- (Fotuna), name applied to sea-worm, etc. II 293
- (Hervey Is.): connection with lizards and eels, II 273-5
- (Hervey, Aitutaki): chief god, I 293, cf. III 289: god of Te-erui, I 285, cf. Atiu, I 295, 298 *and n.* 1: leaving Mangaia for Aitutaki, III 289: lizard and eel associated with, II 273, 275
- (Hervey, Atiu): ancestor of kings, I 294, 295, 297-8, III 69: chief god, I 298: father of first man? I 293-4: and name of island, I 293-4
- (Hervey, Mangaia): and common right to fruit trees, III 289, 292: Rongo associated with, in Pili-Sina myth, II 274: Rongo winning supremacy from, III 289: son of Vatea, II 275 *n.* 1, III 289
- (Hervey, Rarotonga): ancestor of Tangia group? III 68, cf. I 272: brother of Tane, Rongo and Tu, I 266: a chief god, I 235, 293: eel associated with, II 273-4: god of Iro, I 272: leaving Mangaia for Rarotonga, III 289: son of Atea, I 266
- (Marquesas): Atea defeating, I 308 *n.* 1, II 274, III 70: and Fatuhuku Is. I 306-8: not worshipped, I 308 *n.* 1
- (New Hebrides): coconut derived from head of, II 303: as eel and snake, II 303
- (Niue): connection with *fomo* and laws, I 349: emblem of, kept by king, III 37-8: song in praise of, II 291

INDEX

471

- (Paumotu): introduced by “Tangaroans,” I 340–2: later than Tane, I 340
- (Paumotu, Hao): a chief god, I 339: sky kept up by, I 339
- (Paumotu, Mangareva): ancestor of one line of kings, I 326, 328, 329, 330, 332–3, III 71: as creator, I 339: and *marae* of Anua Motua dynasty, I 333: prayed to on birth of child, I 340: *see also* Tangaroa-hurupapa, I 326
- (Paumotu, Takoto), assisting Tane against Atea, I 339 *and n.* 8
- (Rotuma): name avoided, III 95: prayed to, for crops, III 337, 339
- (Samoa): Ationgie descended from, I 61: bowl emblem of, II 219, III 6: as “creator,” etc. I 47–8, 53, 89–90, 123–4, 138–9, II 219: and Fe’e, *see under* Fe’e: and Fiji, I 89–90, 120–1, 138: incarnate in lizard? II 231–2, cf. II 231–5: Lu descended from, etc. *see under* Lu: Malietoa descended from, III 64: and Manu’a, *see under* Manu’a, *and under* *tuimanu’a*: offerings to (annual), III 324: an original god, II 219: and Pava, *see under* Pava: and the peopling of the Pacific, I 48, 94, 96, 122, 124: Pili descended from, I 48, 58, II 231: prayed to, by son of *tuimanu’a*, III 215: priest, brother of *tuimanu’a*, I 52 *and n.* 1: Savea Si’uleo the son of, *see under* Savea Si’uleo: and the *senga* bird, I 99, 104, cf. 98–9, 128: and Sina, II 219, cf. I 51: sky, etc. associated with, I 47–8, 51, 93, 94, 95, II 83: snipe representing? II 219: stones representing, II 219: sun associated with, I 50, 51: and the Tangaroa f., Savai’i, *see under* Tangaroa title: Tangaroa-a-Ui the son of, *see* Tangaroa-a-Ui: taro derived from, I 102: Ti’i-ti’i as adversary of, I 102, 122, 125, cf. 99, 100: Ti’i-ti’i a son of, II 232 *and n.* 3: and Tonga, I 89–90, 138: Tonumaip’e a f. descended from, I 104, 122: and *tuifiti*, *see under* *Tuifiti*: *tuimanu’a* descended from, etc. *see under* *Tuimanu’a*: *tuitunga* as son of, I 104, 122: Upolu chiefs not “sons” of, I 104, 122, 125, 129, cf. III 63, 64 *and n.* 2
- (Society): creator, I 211, 213, 222: eels, etc. associated with, I 220, II 267: Oro cult associated with cult of, I 243, 244, 248: otiose, I 222, 248: Tangaroa-Oro cult superseding Tane cult, I 245–9
- (Society, Ra’iatea): ancestor of kings, I 221, cf. 219, III 66: chief god, I 221: “creator,” I 211–12, 220: and Hina, I 219, 220: Hiro descended from, I 220: Opoa marae originally belonging to, *see under* *Marae* (Ra’iatea): the original god, I 222: Oro the son of, I 220, cf. 219: Oro superseding, I 219–22: and the peopling of the islands, I 211–12, II 267: Ra’iatea as centre of cult, I 248
- (Society, Tahiti): Attahuru *marae* once associated with? I 233: god of the Faaa “Tangaroans,” I 234: human sacrifice offered to, I 223: Manu’an-Rarotongan connection with, I 221 *and n.* 7, 230–2: Oro associated with, I 223, 243, 248: Oro more often invoked than, I 247: a principal god, I 237: Ra’iatea the place of origin of, I 221 *and n.* 7, 230–2, 236–7, II 267: and Tahiti *marae* in Vaiari, I 230, 232, cf. 222: Tane as husband of, I 244: Tane more often invoked than, I 247: and Tane, the original gods, I 243, 244, 249, cf. 237: Tane’s supposed inferiority to, I 245: Tautira *marae* once associated with? I 227, 228: not a Teva god originally, I 222, cf. 221, 227–8, 229–33
- (Tonga): as “creator,” I 104–5, 136–7, 138–9, cf. 141–2: first men descended from sons of, II 232–3: fishing up world, I 141, cf. 142: god of artificers, II 413: priests of, carpenters, II 413: and the snipe, I 104–5, 138, cf. 139: having temple? II 413: and *tuitunga*, *see under* *Tuitonga*
- Tangaroa, of Takaroa: I 335, 336, 341, II 79: a “Tangaroan,” I 338, 341, *see also* names of children, I 335
- Tangaroa-a-Ui (Samoa): association with Manu’a, I 50, 51, 53, 100: made king by heavenly council, I 51, cf. 100–1: marrying Sina, I 51: and Pava, I 100: son of Tangaroa, I 50–1, 104, III 63: selecting Ta’e-o-Tangaroa as heir, I 51, cf. 100–1: Ta’e-o-Tangaroa the son of, I 51, 52, 104, III 63: *tuifiti* as son of, I 50
- Tangaroa family (gods), Samoa: associated with sky, I 50: conflict with Losi, I 99–102, 122, 125: conflict with Lu, I 57, 97, 122, 125, 127–8: electing the first *tuimanu’a*, I 49–50, 55, III 214, 226–7: and kava chewers of *tuimanu’a*, I 50, II 470: kava of, taken by Losi, etc. I 101: Manu’a the home of, I 49–50, 53, 56, 90
- Tangaroa f., Falelatai (Samoa): kinship with the other families of place, II 25: original chiefs of place, II 24–5, 26: and the Savai’i Tangaroa, II 19, 21: title of, II 25: *tuiaana* f. not originally connected with, II 21: Tuimaleali’ifano f. derived from, II 20
- Savai’i: and the Falelatai Tangaroa, II 19, 21: founded by Fune, I 63, 67, II 30–1, III 64: group fighting of villages of, II 85–6, 335–6: Muliana f. connected with, II 31, 335: *sa’oaua* name, II 99: seats, II 30–1: seats, and local marriages, II 31

- title (Savai'i): given to Fune by Tangaroa, I 63-4, 67, III 64-5; granted by orators concerned, II 31; importance, I 63; the *tafa'i* of holder of, I 64, II 31, III 64-5
- “Tangaroans”: in Aitutaki, I 293; in Atiu, I 297-8; coming from Fiji, I 69, 88, 90-1, 109, 110, 111; competitive nature of legends (Samoa), I 89-90, 94, 95, 106; cf. Tahiti, I 245; connection between Fiji, Tonga, etc. in myths, I 117, 128-9; divine descent (Samoa), I 90, 123-4, 138, 139, cf. 48-9; (Tonga), I 137-42, II 232-3, III 65-6; identical with “Rarotongans,” I 30, 69, 88, 341; and the kava-fowl question (Samoa), I 98-9, 128; the last comers, I 90-1, 125-8; in Mangaia, *see under* Tongan clan; in Mangareva, I 327-8, 331-3, III 71, cf. I 338-42; in Manu'a, I 88, 111, 119-21, 123-5, cf. Society, I 221, 231, *see also under* Manu'a; in Marquesas, I 306-8; in Niue, I 347-8; peopling Pacific, etc. I 48, 94, 96, 122, 124, 130, *see also under place names*; in Ra'iatea, I 218-22, 233; in Rarotonga, I 234-6, 265-8, 280; in Samoa, I 32-3, 34, 38, 88, *see also under* Tongan war; in Savai'i, I 62-8, 88, 108-9, 111, 124-5; in Tahiti, I 229-33, 233-6; in Takaroa and Hao, I 338, 341; in Tonga, I 32-3, 34, 38, 88, 110, 111, 167
- pre-“Tangaroans”: (Mangareva), I 327, 331, III 71; (Rarotonga), I 264-5?; (Samoa), I 88; (Savai'i), I 68, 94, 125; (Tahiti), I 249; (Tonga), I 88; (Upolu), I 68, 88, 92-4, 125-8; inferior descent (Samoa), I 90 *and n.* 5, 100, 123-4, 125-6, 129, 138, 139; (Tonga), I 136-42, III 65; none in Manu'a? I 111, 125; at war with “Tangaroans,” *see* Losi, Lu, Pava, *and* Ti'i
- Tangihia (Takaroa, Paumotu): chieftainship contested, I 336, II 79-80; killed, I 336; son of (chief) Tangaroa, I 335, II 79
- Tangiaa (Rarotonga): appointing chiefs, priests, etc. I 270, 271, 272, II 427-8; and Araitetonga *marae*, II 77; Atea as ancestor of (Aitutaki), I 286-7; and Atiu, etc. I 295, 298; date of colonization by, I 270-1; Fijian ancestry of, I 267; and the god Tangiaa, I 267; gods given by Iro to, I 272; Iro's son adopted by, I 234, 270, 272-3, III 68; Karika adopted by, I 269; Karika aiding, I 234, 235, 269, II 77; Karika apportioning land to, I 269, 271, III 293; and Karika, and the beach road, I 269, 270, 271-2 *and n.* 1; and Karika, dividing land, I 270, 271, cf. III 293; and Karika, founding the two great groups, II 62; Karika marrying daughter of, I 269, II 78; and Karika, organizing Rarotongan constitution, I 234, 270, 271-2, II 395, cf. 427; Karika submitting to, I 269; Karika's daughter married by, I 268-9, II 78; and Karika's son, I 270, 271; and the Kaukura tribe, I 265; and Mauke, I 267-8, 295, 298; and Mоторо, I 275, 285, cf. 287, II 271; and previous settlers, I 264-5; and Rata's descendants, I 265; related to Ru (Aitutaki), I 286-7, 293; Ruatapu the son of (Aitutaki), I 285, 293, cf. 275; of Samoan ancestry, I 234, 267; and Savai'i, I 267-8; not submitting to Karika, I 268-9, 271; and the supremacy of island, I 268-9, 271, 278-9, 419, III 36, 329; of Tahitian origin, I 234-6, 267, 280; Tangaroa a god of, I 272; a “Tangaroan,” I 234, 267, 280; Tongan ancestry of, I 267; and Tutapu, I 234, 235, 267-8, III 291
- group (Rarotonga): area, I 278, 279, II 44; branches, I 273 *and n.* 5, 279, 280, 281, II 78; descent from gods, III 68, *see also* Tangiaa; descent from Iro, III 68, *see also under* Pa; Makea chief consecrated in *marae* of, II 77; one of the three great groups, I 279, 280, 281; Pa the head chief of, *see under* Pa; and term *ariki*, II 361-2; Tinomana group connected with, I 273, 274-7, II 44, 78, III 68
- Taro: brought to earth by Ti'i-ti'i (Samoa), I 102; as clan *atua* (Tikopia), II 299, 300; first-fruits due to chief (Samoa), III 346; god immanent in end of leaf of, (Samoa), II 228; leaf-embellment of Pava, worn in battle (Samoa), II 242, 319; private property? (Mangaia) III 289
- Taruia (Aitutaki): and Avarua, I 284; descendant of, marrying descendant of Maro-una, I 286, 287, 288, 289, 291-2, 293; descendant's claim recognized in Aitutaki, I 283-4, 291-3, II 79, III 36, 329; descent from Te-erui, I 283, 287, 291; genealogies referred to, I 283, 287, 290; supplanted by Ruatapu, I 283, 286, 291, 292; as Tongareva king, I 283, 286
- Tattooing: as clan mark, II 325? (Atiu); 324-5 (Aitutaki); 327 (Fotuna); 325, 326-7 (Marquesas); 327? (Paumotu); 321 (Samoa); ? 323 (Society); 321, 322 (Tonga); *see also* Easter Is. II 327, 328; difference of design in N.W. and S.E. groups, Marquesas, I 304-5; an esteemed art (Samoa), II 377; on face (Marquesas), I 305; (Tahiti), II 323; fish designs (Paumotu), II 327; introduced from Fiji (Samoa), I 116; king's son tattooed (Paumotu), III 204; new name received at, (Marquesas), III 156; origin (Mangaia), II 324; (Samoa), I 116; rank indicated by, II 325 (Marquesas); 323 (Society), *see also* Paumotu, II 327;

INDEX

473

- sacred king inspecting (Easter Is.), I 398: sacred king tattooed (Easter Is.), I 397: sacred king not tattooed (Mangaia), I 256, III 84; (Tonga), III 75 and *n.* 9; *see also* Marquesas, I 420, III 85: tattooer compensated as priest (Samoa), II 408: tattooer, and term *tufunga* (Samoa), II 377, 408: *taupou*, etc. present when boys tattooed (Samoa), II 160–1: unsatisfied vengeance recorded by, II 349 (Mangaia); 351 (Marquesas)
- Tau (Samoa): capital of Manu'a, I 44, 53, II 13, 157: *fono* of Manu'a held at, II 13, 84–5, 449, 461: greeting of, II 469–70: the House of Three, II 13, 469: the House of Three electing *tuimanu'a*, I 54, cf. 55, II 14, III 171, 175, 176, cf. 113: rivalry between Fitiuta and, I 44, 53, 54–5, 56, II 157, III 48
- Tauaana f. (Samoa): branch of *tuiaana* f., II 18–19, 465, III 112: descent, II 19, 21: at Falelatai, II 19, 23: kinship with other Falelatai chiefs, II 23–4, 25
- Taulangi f. (Samoa): branch of *tuiaana* f., II 18–19, 465, III 112: chief seats, II 19, cf. III 172, 173: and privy council of *tuiaana*, III 112–13: the Sava'a of House of Nine? III 172–4, cf. II 19
- Taumaco, Duff Is.: clan groups with totems, I 413: islets governed by chief, I 413: matrilineal descent in, I 413: natives largely Polynesian, I 413
- Taupou* (village maiden), Samoa: consulted by chiefs, II 106: daughter of head chief of place, II 98: “eldest sister” of the *auauma* girls, II 151, cf. 154–5: governing the *auauma*, II 106: head of the *auauma*, II 98: as kava-maker, II 453: marriage of, and war allies, II 331: officially superior to her brother, II 100, 106, 188: present at tattooing of village boys, II 160–1: rank of family personified in, II 91, 100: receiving “death”-mat on accession of brother to title, II 100: the *sa'ouauma* name held by, II 98, 100, 106, 188, 465, 470: seat in council-house, II 106, 453, 457, 458: as “sister” of chief, I 78, II 99–100: of *tuimanu'a*, “greeted,” II 470: *tuitonga* *fefine* comparable with, II 188–9
- Tautira chiefs, area under, I 174, 176
- Tavi of Tautira (Tahiti): defeated by Vehiatua, I 186: *rahui* for son of, I 186, II 117, III 328: wrestling suzerainty from Papara chief, I 185–6: *see also* Tavi eauru, I 191
- Tawhiti (Tahiti, etc.), traditional place name, I 20
- Te-erui (Aitutaki): allotting land to Ru women, I 282–3, 289, 291, 292, II 46, cf. III 293: arrival of, I 282, 284, 290: Atea as ancestor of, I 286–7, III 69: Atiu chief descended from, I 295, 298 and *n.* 1, III 69: coming from Avaiki, I 282, 285: descendant of Maro-una marrying descendant of, I 286, 287, 288, 289, 291–2, 293: districts of, I 283, 291: the first *ariki* descended from, I 283, 287, 291: the first man, I 285: head chief of island, I 290–1: *marae* erected by, II 62: “moulding” Aitutaki, I 285: Rongo and Tangaroa aiding, I 285: Tangaroa as ancestor of (Atiu), I 295, 298 *n.* 1: and Tangaroa's lizard, II 273
- Tefana i Ahurai, *see* Faa
- Tei group (Taeeh, Tai, Taii), Nukuhiva: allies of, I 311, 319, cf. 320: area, I 304, 311, 313, 314–15, II 47–8, 491: Havvoh section most important, I 311, cf. II 47: linguistic peculiarities, I 304, cf. II 46: subdivisions with chiefs, I 310–11, II 47–8, 349–50, 491: and Taipii group, descendants of brothers, I 314–15, II 46–7: and Taipii, intermarrying, II 350–1
- head chief: and control of group, etc. I 310, cf. 316, 317, 320–1, II 47: district, II 47: divine descent, I 314, III 69–70: leading group in war? I 317, 321: as Nukuhiva king? I 320, 321, 322–3, cf. 318: related to sub-chiefs, II 47–8, 349–50, III 150: sanctity, III 85: summoning group to council, II 491, 492, III 128–9: tribute paid to, I 317, 321: and turtle-catching ceremony, II 282, 310, III 36–7, 129
- Teipe (Mangaia): associated with crabs and pigeons? II 272: god of branch of Tongan clan, II 272, cf. list of battles, I 261: incarnate in centipede, II 272, cf. 278: worshipped at Vaiau, II 43, 272
- Temari'i Ari'ifaataia (Ari'ifaataia, Temarre): chief of Papara and head of Teva, I 202–203: death, I 204: guardian of, offering chieftainship to Pomare I, II 73, cf. I 202: half-brother of Teri'irere, I 191, 202, II 73: “king” of Tahiti, I 202: and Pomare II, confederates, I 204
- Temples: (Samoa), II 82, III 49; (Society), III 81–2; (Tonga), II 412–13: assembly house as temple, *see under* Assembly house: kept in order by priest's attendants, II 431 (Marquesas); 414 (Society); 409 (Tonga): *see also* Samoa, the House of Fe'e, II 474, III 46, 110–11, cf. II 220
- Te Oropaa, *see under* Attahuru
- Teri'irere (Tahiti): Amo abdicating on birth of, I 187, 191–2, cf. III 153: chief of Papara and the Teva clan, I 194–5, 197, 198, 199: confused with Temari'i, I 191: date of birth, I 187: death, I 202: effort to establish supremacy of, I 187–90, 192–5, II 72, 117: extent of influence, I 193: half-brother of Temari'i, I 191, 202, II 73: kinship right to visit Hapape, I 196, II 72, III 79: *maro-ura* of, I 188, 192 *n.* 8, 200–1, *see also* Maro-ura:

- pyramid at *marae* built for, I 174, cf. 187, 193 and *n.* 7, II 63, 117: *rahui* imposed for, I 187–8, II 117, III 328: son of Amo and Pura, I 174, 187, 189, 194
- Tetuanui, *see* Iddeah
- Teu (Whappai, Otey), Tahiti: birth, I 196: chief of Purionuu, I 189, 190, 192: father of Pomare I, I 189, 192, 195, 196, 241: marrying Ra'iatean princess, I 196, 213: of Paumotuian origin, I 196, 241: paying homage to Pomare II, III 220–1: relationship to Amo and Tutaha, I 190–1
- Teva (Tahiti): area, I 173–7, 178, cf. 227, III 123: clan slogan, I 173: dominant clan, I 171: eight branches with own chiefs, I 173, 178, 180, 181, 189, 218, II 341, 487: influence outside own area, I 174, *n.* 8, 177–9, 187, cf. 193: Inner Teva, I 173–4, 180: name, known in Fiji, etc. I 172: Oro not originally a god of, I 222, 224–8: Outer Teva, I 174–7, 179–80: Ra'iatean origin not claimed for, I 244: a social group, I 171, 173, 218, II 39–40, 341–2, 487, cf. II 389, III 148: supporting Attahuru in war *re* Oro image, I 208: Tane the god of? I 236–41, 243–4, II 264–5, III 66: Tangaroa not originally a god of, I 222, cf. 221, 227–8, 229–33
- Papara chiefs: Amo, *see that name*: *ari'i rahi*, I 172, 178: chief as priest, III 34: chieftainship passing to younger son branch, I 186–7, III 374, 375, cf. I 194, III 211: connection with Punaauia chiefs, I 172: connection with rain and wind, I 172, 173: descent from Vaiari branch, I 172, 173, 174, II 39, 40: disastrous attempt at extension of powers of, I 187–90, 192–5, II 72: not dominating whole island, I 187, cf. 189, 191: and Eimeo, I 193, 210, II 69–70: extinction of line of Amo, I 204: head chieftainship passing from Vaiari branch to, I 184–5, 189, 229, II 40, 341, III 123, 183, 199–200, 365 *n.* 1: heads of whole group, I 177, 185, 187, 189, 191, 200, 203, II 40, 341, 487: (hereditary) titles of, II 69: *marae*, *see* Mahaiatea, Taputuarai, and Tooarai *under Marae* of Papara: and the *marotea* and *maro-ura*, *see under those titles*: and the Pomare chiefs, I 200, 202–4, 208, II 73, III 211: related to sub-chiefs of area? II 389, cf. I 186, II 39–40, III 148: sacred, III 79: shark-god ancestor of, I 172–3, II 39, 116, 270, III 66, cf. I 243, 265–6, 307–8: shark-god of, and Tane, I 238–41, 243, II 264–5, III 66: summoning group to council, war, etc. I 177, 185, 229, II 341–2, 485–6, 487–8, cf. I 193: Tati, I 204, II 489, cf. III 211: Temari'i, *see that name*: Teri'irere, *see that name*: Tuitera, and Tavi of Tautira, I 185–6, 186–7, cf. 189: and the Vehiatua, I 186, cf. 189, 192, 193–4, 195–6, 202–3, II 40, 341–2
- Vaiari chiefs: belonging to oldest and highest ranked branch, I 172, 173, 174, 184, 185, 189, 229, 232, II 40, 486: great chiefs, I 178: (hereditary) titles of, I 229, II 69, 70, III 162, cf. I 230, 232: *marae*, *see Marae* of Vaiari: *maro-ura* worn by, *see under Maro-ura*: Vaiari lady wooed by Tangaroa, I 221, and *n.* 7, 230–2
- Theft: a crime, III 25 (Marquesas); 3, 4 (Samoa); 21, 22 (Society): not a crime? (Marquesas), III 25: an infringement of taboo (Tonga), II 340, III 15: outside tribe, not a crime (Niue), III 27: from strangers (Society), III 21, 22: tribe avenging injury to individual (Marquesas), II 351: within tribe, a crime (Niue), III 27
- Thieves: banished, III 29 (Ellice); 11 (Samoa); 19, 20 (Society): beaten, III 29 (Easter Is.); 28 (Fotuna); 21 (Society): burning hair of, (Society) III 21: burning “spirit” of, (Rarotonga) III 24: divination to discover, III 30–1 (New Hebrides); 18–19, 34 (Society); cf. Samoa, II 407, III 7: double restitution exacted from, (Ellice), III 29: drowned, III 30 (Bukabuka); 21 (Society): god of, (Society), III 21: (inveterate) killed by own people (Mangaia), II 347, cf. III 23–4: invoking death of, (Samoa), III 6, 7: killed (Fotuna), III 28?; (Mangaia), III 23–4; (Manihiki), III 30; (Marquesas), III 26; (Rarotonga), II 349; (Society), III 19, 21: killing of, not avenged (Mangaia), III 23–4: mutilated (Mangaia), III 24: property of, bewitched (Marquesas), III 159, 227–8: property of, devastated (Easter Is.), III 29; (Hervey), II 348–9, III 23: property of, taken (Rarotonga), II 348–9; (Society), III 21; (Tikopia), III 30: not punished? (Marquesas), III 25: not punished if not caught in act (Society), III 21–2, cf. Easter Is. III 29: set adrift in canoe, III 29 (Ellice); 27 (Niue): stolen article or equivalent taken from, (Marquesas), III 26; cf. Easter Is. III 29, and Rarotonga, II 348–9: strangled (Tokelau), III 28: swearing innocence (Samoa), III 5–6, 7, cf. Tonga, III 14–15: swearing falsely, killed by family god (Samoa), II 223, cf. III 6: trial by ordeal (sharks), (Tonga), II 340, III 15
- Three, a favourite number (Marquesas), I 314, II 49, 142
- Thrones, etc. *see* Seats of chiefs, etc.
- Ti plant: leaf emblem of god used in war (Samoa), II 320, 242: man deriving from, (Niue), I 349

INDEX

475

- Tiaio** (Mangaia): adopted in place of Tane, I 259, II 272: associated with Mоторо, I 259: date, I 259: deified secular king, I 259: god of the Mautara, I 259, II 272: incarnate in eel and shark, II 272: worshipped at Mara, II 43, 272
- Ti'i-ti'i** (Tiki-tiki): as adversary of Tangaroa (Samoa), I 102, 122, 125: ally of Losi against Tangaroa f. (Samoa), I 99, 100: connection with Maui, I 91, 100, 102, 302, II 232 *n.* 3: as creator (Marquesas), I 302: as first man, I 302; (Paumotu), I 339, II 205, III 71: getting *taro* (Samoa), I 102: Hao kings descended from, (Paumotu), I 337: Hina as wife of, (Paumotu), I 337, II 205, 287: and "incest" (Niue), II 206: Rii a descendant of, (Paumotu), II 287: sky raised by, (Samoa) II 232: son of Tangaroa (Samoa), II 232 and *n.* 3: volcano cult associated with, I 303: not worshipped in Samoa or Tonga, I 91
- Tikopia**: chiefs imposing taboos, III 341, 342, 363: Fotuna connection with, I 368-9: having head chief? I 410-11, 412-13, III 30: natives akin to Polynesians, I 410: and question of sacred and secular kingship, I 412-13, 421: sub-groups (with own chiefs), I 411, 412, II 58, 297-8: two main groups? I 411: villages, etc. I 410, 411, 412, II 297-8
- Tilafainga**, *see* Taema and Tilafainga
- Time**, computation of: and abdication custom, etc. I 16-17: chief not begetting heir early, I 15: genealogies not strictly accurate, I 17-18: heir not always eldest of next generation, I 13-14, 15-16: and matrilineal descent, I 14-15: *see also* division of time known to *orero* (Society), II 423; and sun going too fast (Samoa), I 50
- Tineh** (Tonga), II 191, 193-4, 196
- Tinirau** (Tingilau): king of fish (Mangaia), II 277: and his turtles (Samoa), II 230, 245: *see also* Rua-Hatu-Tinirau (Society), I 238, 239
- Tinomana group** (Rarotonga): area, I 273, 277, 279, II 44: chief as priest, III 36: chief having seat in Makea *marae*, II 77, 78: connection with Karika group, I 273-4, 276-7, cf. 279, 281, II 78, III 68: connection with Tangiia group, I 273, 274-7, 279, II 44, 78, III 68: genealogies referred to, I 275-6: one of the great groups, I 279, 280, 281: origin of name, I 275: sub-groups, I 273 *n.* 5: and term *ariki*, II 362
- Titles** (and family names): abdication of, on birth of son (Society), I 187, 191, 242, cf. 199, III 81, 153 and *n.* 10: the *ao* (Samoa), I 76, II 358: *areoi* title hereditary (Ra'iatea), I 219: bound to head of holder (Samoa), III 214, 226, cf. I 49-50: and chief's head, same term applied to (Samoa), III 227: chiefs' titles hereditary (in family), (Hao), ? III 222; (Rarotonga), I 265, 279-0, cf. 274; (Samoa), II 14, 90, III 180, 183, 365, 366, 387-8, 392, cf. III 181; (Society), I 214, II 388, III 162-3; (Tonga, Finau), I 155, III 187; *see also under names of chiefs*, etc.: claims to, disputed (Samoa), III 3, 178, 181, cf. II 95; (Tonga), III 189, 191, 192 and *n.* 1, 194: disputes *re*, settled by council (Samoa), III 3, 181; (Tahiti, *hiva*), II 387: each district having own title (Society), II 489: family designated by name of family head (Rarotonga), II 45: family head bearing family name, III 161, 218, 397; (Rotuma), II 54, III 204-5; (Samoa), II 3, 4, 5, 6-7, 15, 16, 101, 104, 131, III 179: family member elected to bear name must be recognized by chief (Rotuma), III 205: family name associated with control over family (Samoa), III 179, cf. 181, 366, *see also* family head governing family, *under* Government: family name in female line (Samoa), *see* *Sa'oauqualuma* name: family name granted by family (Samoa), II 16, III 179, 181, 182, 184, 207-8, 366-7, cf. Rotuma, III 205, 225: family name hereditary in family (Samoa), II 5, cf. III 179-80, 181, 182, 366-7, *see also* Rotuma, III 204-5: family name necessary to candidate for group title (Rotuma), III 205, 225-6, cf. Samoa, III 179, 182-3, 184: family name withdrawn by family, (Samoa), III 207-8, 242: family name withdrawn by family before great chief deposed (Rotuma), III 205, 212, 225: family names and titles, III 161-3: Fijian titles in Polynesian islands, I 115, II 359, 363, III 162: gods granting, (Samoa), I 49-50, III 214, 215, 219, 220: gods interested in candidates to, III 218-20; 215, 219, cf. 223-5 (Samoa); *see also* Mangaia, III 201, 219-20; Rotuma, III 225-6; Society, III 223-4: granted by administrative councils (Samoa), I 85, II 14-17, 21, 31, III 176, cf. II 366; *see also* election of king (Fotuna), I 363, II 495, III 205; (Rotuma), II 495; (Tahiti, *hiva*), II 42, 387, cf. III 17; cf. Tonga, *kau matua*, II 477, and III 186, cf. 190: granted by orators (councils), Samoa, II 377, III 143, 178, 185, 207, *see also under* Malietoa title, *tuiaana* title, etc.: granted by place concerned (Samoa), II 25, III 165, 180, 181, 182-3, 185, cf. Mata'afa title, II 28-30: granted and withdrawn by same persons (Samoa), III 182, 207-8, 230, 242, *see also under* Election: granters of title influenced by chief's kin (*usoali'i*), Samoa, II 15, 377,

- III 111, 170–1, 175, 177, cf. 184: granters of title related to chief (Samoa), II 15–17, 21–2, 31–2, III 48, 145, 171–5; cf. Ellice, I 378, III 206, and Tonga (*tuikanokubolu*), III 188–9, 191, 193–4: granting of title, a hereditary right (Samoa), I 85, II 15, 16, 31, III 171, 175–6, 177, 184: granting of, unanimous decision necessary (Samoa), II 15, III 171, 176–7, 179, 181, cf. *aloali'i*, III 112, 113; *see also* Society, III 199; and Uvea, III 206: granting of, *see also* Election: group branches concerned in title-granting (Samoa), II 17 (cf. 13, 14), 22, 27–8, 29, 31, 32, 59, 331: group head bearing group title, III 161, 218, 397; (Easter Is.), ? II 57; (Rotuma), ? II 54, 353; (Samoa), II 7, 10, 16, 101, 131; (Society), ? II 69–70, III 162–3: head chiefs having family names as well as group titles, III 161–2; cf. Samoa, I 56, 57; Tonga, I 132, 152, 156, 157, 160: holders of family names, etc. alone forming council (Samoa), II 445–6: honorary designations for places (Samoa), II 462, 464: indicating connection with god, etc. (Society), III 78–9: man bearing name of sacred chief not sacrificed (Marquesas), III 156, 227: members of same family bearing chief's name and orator's name (Samoa), III 144, 146, cf. II 367: orator-chiefs having chief's names (Samoa), II 367, 368–9: orator-chiefs taking orator names (Samoa), II 367, 368–9: orator-name or chief's name of family, attainable by candidate (Samoa), II 368, 369: the *papa* (Samoa), I 76, II 358: the *papa tamafine* (Samoa), I 76: the “pillars” of title-holders (Samoa), II 443, 453, 454, 456, 459, 465, 466, 467, 469, cf. I 63–4, II 31, 83, III 64–5; cf. Rarotonga, II 490, and Tonga, II 478, 480, III 186, 188, 192: sanctifying their holders, etc. II 111, III 227; (Hao), III 222?; (Samoa), III 40–1, 72–3, 74, 214–15, 218; *see also* Ra'iatea, I 219, III 77, and Tonga, III 76, chiefs sanctified after inauguration: sanctity of, and abdication custom (Marquesas), III 203, 221–2; (Society), I 203 and n. 4, III 220–1, 222–3, 373 n. 2; cf. Hao Is. III 222: seats in council-house connected with? (Samoa), II 83, 84, *see also* Marae, seats: several titles held by one chief (kinship claims), III 163 (Samoa); 162–3 (Society): succession to, after father's death (Samoa), II 153, cf. 100, 106; (Tonga), II 380, cf. 411; *see also* Mangaia, III 200–1: succession to, in father's life-time (Marquesas), III 203, 380; (Society), I 187, 191, 241–2, III 81, 153 and n. 10, 195, 196, 371, 372; *see also* Paumotu, III 204, 222, and Samoa (*taupou*), II 100, 106, 188: succession to, *see also* Succession: of *tafa'ifa*, *see under* Samoa, kings: testamentary appointments to, III 164–9, *see also under* Wills: title and chieftainship going together (Samoa), I 74–5, 76–7, 80, cf. I 45, 51, 52, 54–5, II 8, 89, III 163; (Society), I 214, II 69–70, 74, cf. I 201, II 489, III 162–3, 377; *see also* Tonga (Finau), I 155, III 187; and also Marae as social centre: title conferring official importance on chief's heir (Samoa), II 188: title and land, etc. going together, III 165, 170, 364; (Mangaia), III 232, cf. Rarotonga, III 127, 232, 290; (Marquesas), III 203, 232; (Samoa), II 97, III 166, 229, 366; (Society), III 195–6, 197, 231–2, cf. I 201 (Vehiatua), III 272; *see also* Tonga, III 230, 266, 269: title, land, and marae inseparable (Society), II 67, 69–70, III 163, 232: title and marae connected (Society), I 229, 230, II 66, 67, 68, 69–70, 75, III 162–3, cf. 279; *see also* Rarotonga, II 76: title and mummy of dead chief conferring claim to land of latter (Society), III 155–6, 159, 227: titles associated with power of chief (Marquesas), I 317, 324, II 48, 491, III 128: vanquished family head giving up name to protector (*pro forma*), Samoa, II 8: withdrawal of, involving loss of chieftainship (Samoa), III 207, 208: withdrawal of, involving loss of land (Samoa), III 229–30, cf. 240, 364–5: withdrawal of, involving loss of sanctity, etc. III 99; 214 (Samoa): withdrawal of, and sprinkling ceremony (Samoa), II 111, 208, 216, 218: withdrawn by orators (council), (Samoa), II 366, III 182, 207–8, 242: *see also* Names
- Tokelau (Union Islands): dominance of Fakaofu, I 373: Fakaofu chief alone called *ariki*, I 373, 377: government, I 374: group once dominated by Nukunono, I 373: king called *tui-tokelau*, I 374, II 364: king choosing priests, II 439, III 52: king as god, III 88: king having own demesne, III 314: king as priest, I 374, III 88: kingship, succession to, I 373, 374, 375–7, III 382–3: question of gerontocracy in, I 374–7
- Tolufale (Samoa): association with Manono, I 58, 59, II 20: as founder of Savai'i, I 58, 59, cf. 60–8: and Pili's “will,” I 58–9, 60
- f. (Samoa): mother-to-daughter descent in tree of, II 91–2: the original chiefs of Falealili, II 26: the Safenuiuvao f. settling at Falealili through marriages with, II 26, cf. 27
- Tonga and Aitutaki (Ruatapu), I 285, 288, 293: areas, I 131–5: and Bukabuka, I 382: “created” by Tangaroa and snipe,

INDEX

477

- I 104–5: as early settling place, I 28–9, 38, cf. 2: and Fiji, I 103, 105–6, 124, 126, 129, 160: Fiji, Manu'a, Savai'i and, connected in myths, I 117, 128–9: Fijian title in, I 115, II 359, III 162: fished up by Hikuleo, I 105, 124, 126: fished up by Mau'i, I 104–6, 124, 129, 141, 142: fished up by Tangaroa, I 141, cf. 142: and Fotuna, I 142, 143, 167, 368: man descended from gods ("Tangaroans"), I 137–42, II 232–3, III 65–5: man evolving from creeper (pre-"Tangaroans"), I 136–42, cf. 139, III 65: and Manu'a, I 102–6, 119–20, 121–2, 123–4, 126, 128–9, 288: and Niue, I 349–50, 351, 354, *see also* Tuitonga of Niue, I 365: origin of name, I 105–6: and Rarotonga, I 266–7, cf. 274, 277 and *n.* 2, 280: and Samoa (Tingilau), II 230; *see also* Tongan war: Samoa tributary to, I 152, 167: Savai'i connections with, *see under* Savai'i: and the "Tangaroans," I 32–3, 34, 38, 88, 111, 167: Upolu founded by Tongans, I 59: Upolu gods not known in Tonga, I 115: and Uvea (Loyalty), I 415, cf. 417: Uvea (Wallis Is.) connections with, *see under* Uvea (Wallis Is.)
- Fiji and Samoa, native group name, I 170
 - kings, dual kingship: I 131–2, 134–5, 418–19, *see also* Tuitonga (sacred king), *Tuihaatakalaia*, and *Tuikanokubolu* (secular kings): an ancient institution, I 426: disintegration of system after murder of Tukuaho, I 160–6: origin, I 143–4, cf. 144–5: sacred and secular offices originally united, I 135, 418: triple division of rule? I 429, cf. I 153, III 324–5
 - kings: sacred suzerain *tuitonga*, I 131, 134–5, 158, cf. 142, 167, 418: secular suzerain *tuikanokubolu*, I 157–8, 168, 418, cf. I 132, III 119: secular suzerainty not permanent, I 134, 167–9, cf. 147, 434: suzerainty of *tuikanokubolu* barely acknowledged by Finau chiefs, I 154, 168: *tuitonga* as group suzerain, I 134, cf. 134–5, 155, 164, 167
 - Tongatabu: burial place of highest chiefs, I 131, 167: central home of "Tangaroans," I 167: governmental centre of group, I 131, 167, 168: home of greatest chiefs, I 131, 167: large districts, I 132: Mua the capital of, I 132: other groups tributary to, I 142, 167: relations with rest of group, I 167–9: ruler visiting subject islands, I 130: subdivisions with own chiefs, I 133–5, III 13
- Tonga-iti (Mangaia): god of Tongan clan, II 272, 273: incarnate in lizard, II 272, 273, cf. Rarotonga, II 275, 276: lizard and eel in burial cave of worshippers of, II 273: and Tangaroa, associated with eel (Rarotonga), II 273–4: worshipped at Aumoana, II 43, cf. 272
- Tongan clan, (Mangaia): arrival, I 259: branches, I 260: and councils on *marae*, II 489–90: deriving from Tonga, I 259, II 138: district in south? I 259, II 42: extinction of, I 260: gods, *see* Teipe, Tonga-iti, and Turanga: later than the Ngariki, I 259, 262, III 67: and list of battles, I 261: lizard worship connected with, II 273, 275: *marae* at Aumoana, II 272, *n.* 2, cf. II 43: predominance, I 260, cf. 261, 262: "Tangaroans," II 275
- war (Samoa): and ascendancy of the Malietoa, I 60, 65–6, 73–4, 92–3: dance and song incident, I 71–2: date, I 110: expulsion of Tongans, at time of Karika's migration to Rarotonga, I 73: immunity of Manu'a during, I 73, 108, 110, 111, 121, 125, 129: and origin of Malietoa title, I 60, 72–3, III 145: period of occupation by Tongans, I 68–70, 73, 110: the stealing of anchor-pole of *tuitonga*, I 71, 72: subjection of Upolu and Savai'i, I 70–2, 73, cf. 121: and the "Tangaroan" theory, I 109–12, 110–11, 121, 125, 126, 129, cf. I 34, 38–9: Tongans not driven out of Savai'i, I 108, 110–11, 125, 129: no *tuiaana* or *tuiaua* elected during, I 73, 93, 111, II 91 *n.* 4: Tuna and Fata driving out the Tongans, I 60, 65–6, 71–2, 73, 111, 143, II 25, III 145: Tuna and Fata moving the stone, I 72, II 251: Tuna and Fata and wives of *tuitonga*, I 72–3: Tutuila freed from Tongans by Fua'autoa, I 73: and walls in Savai'i, III 250–1, cf. II 234–5, III 253
- Tongareva (Penrhyn Is.): Aitutaki chief as king of, I 283, 286: king as high priest, III 38: natives descended from Manihiki chief, I 381, 383: tribes, I 383
- Tonumaip'e'a f. (Savai'i): and Asau, II 32, 33–6: chief consulting "old woman," II 104–5: chief of, controlling lives and property of the people, III 321: chief of, sharks due to, II 104–5, 244, 311, III 345: effort to concentrate titles, etc. in representative of, I 77–80, cf. 76: establishing representative in Tuamasanga and Atua, I 79, cf. *n.* 1, 80: genealogy referred to, III 65: giving precedence to Ngatoaitale and Tamasoali'i titles, I 79: Lafai as ancestor of, I 75, 104, II 35: Leutongitupaitea as ancestress of, I 75, II 33: Leutongitupaitea marrying *tuitonga*, I 104, II 33: and Manu'a, I 95, 104, 122: the Mavaenga f. in Sataua and Asau related to, II 34, 35–6: mother-to-daughter descent in tree of, II 92: Nafanua as ancestress of,

- I 75, 78, 79, 95, 104, 116, 122, 424, II 33, III 65, cf. II 12: *sa'oauluma* name, II 99: seat of government, Satupaitea, II 32, 33-4: seats of, I 75, 83, II 32: Si'uleo as ancestor of, I 75, 95, 122, II 33, 319, III 65: Si'uleo as god of, I 95: Tangaroa as ancestor of, I 104, 122: *tafa'ifa*-ship passing to *tuiaana* f. from, I 80, 81-2: *tuiaana* f. related to, II 35, cf. I 76, 78: word *pe'a* taboo in district of, III 94
- title: granted by council of the family seats, II 32, 35: importance, I 63, II 32: origin, II 33, cf. I 75, 104
- “Totemism”: II 217-316: 302 (Duff); 296-7 (Easter Is.); 294 (Ellice); 292-3 (Fotuna); 271-80 (Hervey); 295-6 (Manihiki); 280-4 (Marquesas); 303 (New Hebrides); 291-2 (Niue); 301-2 (Ongtong Java); 284-8 (Paumotu); 288-91 (Rotuma); 218-51 (Samoa); 261-71 (Society); 297-301 (Tikopia); 293-4 (Tokelau); 252-61 (Tonga); 294-5 (Tongareva); 293 (Uvea); *details under* Incarnation, etc.: cross-split totems? (Samoa), II 227-8: eels as sex-patrons? (Paumotu), II 284-6: elements of, in Polynesia, II 217-18: father's totems honoured by children (Fiji), II 134 n. 1: and incarnations of gods, etc. II 308-16: mother's totems honoured by children if living in her tribe (Fiji), II 134 n. 1: split-totems? II 273 (Mangaia); 226-8 (Samoa); 300-1 (Tikopia); 252-3, 260 (Tonga): tree and plant “totems,” *see under* Trees, etc.
- Traditions, songs, etc.: chiefs learning genealogies and, (Marquesas) II 203: chiefs and priests alone understanding script tablets (Easter Is.), I 395, cf. 397-8: each clan having own (Mangaia), I 258, II 43, 345-6: competitive (Samoa), I 89-90: feasts held on child's learning genealogies and, (Marquesas), II 203: king as custodian of, (Easter Is.), I 397, 403, cf. 397-8: king a learned man (Niue), III 133-4: knotted strings as memory-aids (Marquesas), II 203: language of, (Paumotu), II 287, III 92; (Society), III 92, *see also* Marquesas, III 92, *and* Rotuma, III 336-7: the “logs” as records of migrations, I 2, 26-7, 29: the Marquesan logs, I 27, 30-1: pre-Pacific legends not well preserved in Samoa and Tonga, I 91: question of accuracy, III 61-2: the Rarotongan logs, I 27, 29-30, 32, 33, 34-6: recited by the *orero* (Society), II 422, 423: recited by *rongo-rongo* men? (Easter Is.), I 398, 406; (Paumotu), II 433, 434: recited by secondary priests (Marquesas), II 429, 430, 431: reciting of, by night (in *marae*, etc.), Society, II 419: script tablets, annual examination of candidate readers (Easter Is.), I 397-8: script tablets, old man reading ill, deprived of “hat” (Easter Is.), I 398: script tablets, read periodically (Easter Is.), I 397, 398: taught by certain priests (Marquesas), II 203
- official recorders: II 440, cf. I 397, 398 (Easter Is.); II 419, 421, 422-5, cf. 419 *and* n. 2, III 223 (Society): *alataua* orators as record keepers (Samoa), I 82: each district having one or two (Society), II 423: education of, (Society), II 422, 423: the *haerepo* confused with the *orero* (Society), II 423-5, cf. 419, 421, III 223: instructing the people (Society), II 423: *matabule* as record-keepers, etc. (Tonga), II 38, 39, 380, III 370: office hereditary (Society), II 419, 422, 424; (Tonga, *matabule*), II 38, 380, III 370: office hereditary, son inhaling dying breath of father (Society), II 419-20, cf. III 168, 223-4, *see also* Samoa, III 165-6, 223-4: the *orero*, chiefs (Society), II 423: *orero*, investing king (Society), II 424: *orero*, learned according to rank (Society), II 422: the *orero*, learned in astronomy, etc. (Society), II 423: the *orero*, more than one at a *marae* (Society), II 422: *orero*, official orators (Society), II 423-4, 488: *orero*, verbal accuracy (Society), II 422, 424, cf. 419
- Treason, offender banished (Society), III 211, 272
- Trees (and plants): associated with Tangaroa, common (Mangaia), III 289, 292: as boundary marks, III 316? (Funafuti); 308, 309 (Rotuma); 249 (Samoa); 278 (Society): cognizant of inauguration of king (Society), III 79, 326-7: common and individual property, III 289-90, 292 (Hervey); 314 (Tokelau); *see also under* Banana, Banyan, Breadfruit, Coconut, etc.: corpse hung on tree (Tahiti), III 154: felling of, chant to appease tree-spirit (Hervey), II 427: gods immanent in fruit, II 227, 252 (Samoa, Tonga): gods immanent in trees, II 273? (Mangaia); 220, 221, 242, 320 (Samoa): green branches as peace emblems (Tahiti), II 343, cf. Tonga, II 341: hereditary ownership of, (Marquesas), III 296, 298, *see also under* Breadfruit; (New Hebrides), III 319: landowner claiming chestnut fruit (Hervey), III 290, 292: leaves as district badge on canoes (Samoa), II 317-18: leaves, god associated with ends of, (Samoa), II 228, 241, 250: at *marae*, sacred, II 240-1: names of trees, etc. applied to district: (Samoa), II 318-19: offerings to trees (Tonga), II 253: ownership of breadfruit and land connected? (Rarotonga), III 291-2, 293: plant *atua* (Tikopia), II 298, 299, III 341: plant *atua* eaten by

INDEX

479

- certain persons (Tikopia), II 300: plant *atua* only taboo to worshippers? (Tikopia), II 298, 300, 300-1, cf. 299: plant emblems of gods worn by worshippers in battle (Samoa), II 241, 242, 250, 319, 320: plant, etc. emblems, curing illness of worshippers (Samoa), II 250: no plant *otua* (Tonga), II 252: planted at birth of child, III 281 (Fiji, Marquesas, New Hebrides, New Zealand, ? Tonga): planting of, and title to land? (Niue), III 304, 305: plants as secondary totems (Fiji), II 240: and plants, as "totems," II 240-2: sacred to god, bleeding when cut (Samoa), II 242: as sanctuaries (Samoa), II 242: separate ownership of land and, III 297, 298 (Marquesas); 319 (New Hebrides); 310-11, 312 (Rotuma); 279-80, 281-2, 284-5 (Society): separate ownership of land and trees, and matrilineal descent, III 282-5: souls of dead and tree near Avaiki (Mangaia), III 299-300: trees as principal totems (with animals), Fiji, II 240: uncultivated, common property, III 316, 317 (Funafuti); 291, 292 (Rarotonga): for use of strangers (Niue, Penrhyn), III 281, 319: *see also* Banana, Banyan, Breadfruit, Coconut, Taro, Ti, and Yams
- Trials**, *see* Administration of justice, trials
- Tribute**, III 343-63; 362-3 (Easter Is.); 362 (Ellice); 361 (Fotuna); 358 (Hervey); 358-60 (Marquesas); 360-1 (Niue); 360 (Paumotu); 361 (Rotuma); 344-7 (Samoa); 353-7 (Society); 363 (Tikopia); 347-53 (Tonga); 362 (Uvea): banishment for refusal to pay (Society), III 19: due to head of group, III 399-400: rendered by group and by conquered people, III 343-4, 352: *see also* Food offerings, etc.
- Tu**: brother of Tane, Tangaroa and Rongo (Rarotonga), I 266: as creator of Tahiti (Paumotu), I 241 *n. 2*: food offerings to, (Mangareva), III 335: the god of the Pomare (Tahiti), I 241-3: a great god (Mangareva), I 241, 342: guiding the eel which became Tahiti, I 211, cf. 236-7: incarnate in a fish? (Paumotu), II 288: later than Maui, I 302, cf. 342: *marae* (Mangareva), II 80: meaning of name, I 242: not one of the highest gods, I 241: son of Atea and Papa (Rarotonga), I 266: and Ta-whiri-ma-tea (New Zealand), I 242: worship spread over Pacific, I 241
- Tuamasanga** (Samoa): and the *alataua*, I 83, 424, 429, II 468: *Atua* boundary encroaching on, III 251-2: capital (former), the seat of the chief, I 44, II 11-12, cf. 21: capital, *see* Afenga: constitution, etc. formed by Ationgie, I 60, 73-4: council of chiefs in? III 113-14, 116: no districts in, I 42: *fono* of, II 13, 449, 460, 461, III 46, 47, 113-14: "greeting," II 468: and the *ituau*, I 83, 424: one of the Upolu kingdoms, I 40, 45, II 10-11, 21: no suzerain of, till first Malietoa, I 74: village-districts, I 40, 42-3
- Tubu** (Tubulahi), Tonga: Finau U. I the son of? I 145, 152, 169, 433: food supply controlled by, I 153, 429, III 324-5: "Mariwagui" a brother of, I 152, 433: relative power of *tuitonga* and, I 152-3: and titles of *tuikanokubolu* and *tuihaatakalaua*, I 145, cf. 146, 433
- family (Tonga): descent from Ngata, ? I 144: furnishing candidates for *tuihaatakalaua* and *tuikanokubolu* titles, I 146, II 185, cf. I 148-9, III 268: Mumui belonging to, *see under* Mumui: principal wife of *tuitonga* a member of, II 185
- George: at assembly house, II 478-9: brother's son as heir to, I 434-5, III 370-1: as chief magistrate, III 13-14: as chief priest, III 35: inauguration of, II 478, 479: inauguration of heir of, I 188: land and men belonging to, III 231: special language used *re*, I 165, III 91: *tuihaatakalaua* superior to, I 147, 149: as *tuikanokubolu*, I 147: *tuitonga* party opposing, I 164
- Josiah, doing homage to *tamaha*, II 198, cf. 193: naming George Tubu as successor, I 147: *tuikanokubolu*, I 146, 147
- Tubu-malohi**: flight to Fiji, I 160: and question of alternating succession, I 434: relationship to Tukuaho, I 147, 160, 434: successors of, I 147, 160, 434, III 371: as *tuikanokubolu*, I 147, 160
- Tubu Nuha**: and assassination of Tukuaho, etc. I 158-60, 162, 165, 169: brother of Finau U II, I 158, 169, III 208: chief of Vavau, I 158, 159, 165, 169, III 208
- Tubu-toa**: brother of Tubu-malohi, I 147, 434: death, I 434: and question of alternating succession, I 434: *tuikanokubolu*, I 147, 434
- Tufunga**, term applied to all experts? II 377, 407-8
- Tui** title, *see under* Chiefs, terms, etc.
- Tuiaana** (Samoa): Aana families not all originally related to, II 19, 20, 21: and the *alataua*, I 422-3: an *ali'ipa'ia*, II 357-8, III 73, cf. 74, 214, cf. 215: and Asau, II 35: banishment of, III 10: body servant, etc. II 375 (cf. 372-3), 376: branch families of line of, II 18-19, 465, III 112, *see also* the Mavaenga, Satuala, Tauaana, and Taulangi families: chief Aana families related to, II 18-22, III 140: crown land of, II 11: dominance in Upolu, I 74: family name, III 162:

- genealogy longer than Manu'an chief's, I 120, cf. 106: genealogy referred to, III 63, 387–8: “greeted” at *fono*, II 465, 466: not interfering *re* local disputes, II 330, III 103: “jester” of *tuiatua* serving, II 374: kava-makers of, II 466: “king” of Aana, I 45, II 11: Lu connected with, I 96, 97, 127, III 63–4: military service due to, I 423, II 11, 330, III 103: mother-to-daughter descent in tree of, II 91: orator-chief descended from, II 20: Pili marrying daughter of, I 58, 93, 94, 101, 126–7, II 20, 228, III 172, 258, cf. III 63–4: pre-“Tangaroan,” I 68, 88, 92, 93, 94, 97, 109, 125, 126–7: regal powers passing from Tonumaipē’a f. to line of, I 80, 81–2: related to Tonumaipē’a family, II 35, cf. I 76, 78: *sa’oauaaluma* name, II 98, 99 and *n.* 1, 465: seat of, the seat of government, II 11, 21: not a son of Tangaroa, I 104, 122, 125, 129: and Tangaroa, III 63, 64, and *n.* 2: Tongan myths not mentioning, I 105–6: no *tuiāana* during Tongan domination, I 73, 93, III, II 91 *n.* 4: and the *usoali’i* and *aloali’i*, II 15, 377, 443, III 111–13, 114–15, 116, 170–1, 175, 177, 184: war allies (*ainga* villages), II 334
- Fonoti: agreement with Va’afusu-anga, III 172: and Atua village-districts, II 464: body servant of *tuiāana*, descended from, I 375, 376: not giving mat to sister, II 95
- Muangututi’a: appointing adopted son as heir, III 145: and *sa’oauaaluma* name of Muangututi’a f. II 99
- Ngalumalemana: and the “death”-mats custom, II 94–5: descendants called *aloali’i*, II 443, III 112: “greeted” at wife’s village, II 24: son of, living in mother’s village, II 24
- Tamalelangi: ancestor of Satuala f., II 18–19, III 174: father of Salamasina, I 80: first historical *tuiāana*, II 91: kinship with Tonumaipē’a and Malietoa families, I 75–6, 77, 78, cf. 80: orator descended from, III 144: passing title to Nafanua, I 78: *sa’oauaaluma* name derived from “sister” of, II 99 and *n.* 1
- title: council granting, influenced by the *usoali’i*, II 15, 377, III 111, 170–1, 175, 177, cf. 184: electoral families related to *tuiāana*, III 171–5, cf. II 15–17: Fasito’otai, etc. and granting of, III 173: granted by the House of Nine, I 85, II 14, 465, III 110–11, 171, 172, 176, cf. I 61–2, 81, II 22, III 46–7, 47–8: granting of, a hereditary right, I 85, III 171: one of the *tafa’ifa* titles, I 45, 74, 76: “pillars” of holder of, II 443, 465, 466: Satuala branch collecting mats for, II 23: succession to (hereditary), II 14, III 387–8, 392, cf. III 178, 185
- Tuiatua* (Samoa): an *ali’i pa’ia*, II 357–8, III 73, cf. 74, 214: body-servant, II 373–4: branches of family of, II 26, 27, 467, *see also* Safenunuivao, and Salevalasi: coconut-mat seat of, II 459: crown land, II 11: the *faleatua* the privy council of, II 443–4, III 113, 170: genealogy referred to, III 64, 388: “greeted,” II 466, 467: inauguration of, II 374: “jester” of, II 373–4: kava chewers of, II 467: king of Atua, I 45, II 11: Lu connected with, I 57, 96–7, 127: Moso connected with, I 100, II 239, III 64: military service due to, II 330: Nafanua acquiring title of, I 79: and orator-chief Leota, II 374–5: “pre-Tangaroan,” I 88, 92, 93, 125, 126: probably the oldest line, I 106, cf. 108: relation representing, II 466, 467: *sa’oauaaluma* name, II 98, 99: seat of, the seat of government, II 11, 21: not a “son” of Tangaroa, I 104, 122, 125, 129: Tongan myths not mentioning, I 105–6: no *tuiatua* during Tongan domination, I 73, 93, III
- title: electoral families related to *tuiatua*? III 175: granted by House of Six, II 14, 466, III 171, 175, 176, cf. I 81: mat-giving at granting of, III 180, cf. II 374: one of the *tafa’ifa* titles, I 45, 74, 76: “pillars” of holder of, II 443, 466, 467: succession to (hereditary), II 14, III 180, 183–4, 388
- Tuifiti* (*tuifiji*): and Alo-alo (Samoa), I 117: association with *tuimanu’a* and *tuitonga* (Samoa), I 106, 120, 125, 128: first-fruits in Fiji due to, (Manu’a) III 346: incarnate in man (Savai’i), II 240: in Samoan and Tongan legends, II 359, III 162: a Savai’i god, I 114, II 240, cf. II 359, III 162: son of Tangaroa (Samoa), I 104, 122: Tangaroa as king of Fiji (Paumotu), I 103–4: title not existing in Fiji, III 162: Tongan god, aiding warriors (Tonga), II 257: trees sacred to (Samoa), II 242: and *tuimanu’a* Ta’e-o-Tangaroa, I 99, 121, III 346
- Tuihaatakalaua* (Tonga): confusion with *tuikanokubolu*, I 144–50, 432–3, 436, II 185, III 193–4: deified daughter of, as protection from *tuikanokubolu*, I 148, cf. 149: divine descent, III 65–6: family of, branch of *tuitonga* f. I 143–4, 149, 432, II 186, III 65–6, 193: a family title, I 145, 149, 150, cf. 432–3, 435: and food controller, III 325: governing own district but acknowledging suzerainty of *tuikanokubolu*, I 158: Hata-Kalawa formerly name of district of, I 132: head chief of Hahake (Ahogge, etc.), I 132, 133, cf. III 268–9, *see* Uvea, I 369–70: head of temporal and military affairs, I 146, 435, cf. 131, 134–5: a higher title than *tuikanokubolu*, I 146,

INDEX

481

- 435, cf. 145, 147, 149, 436: lists of, referred to, I 136, 144, 145, III 66: Mounga-motua the first secular king and, I 143-4, 149: Mounga-Tonga appointing son first *tuikanokubolu*, I 144-5, 149, 433, III 193: succession alternating between families of *tuikanokubolu* and, I 148, 150, 432-6, III 186, 189, 193-4, 389, 393, cf. Borabora, I 214: the Tubu f. furnishing candidates for titles of *tuikanokubolu* and, I 146, II 185, cf. I 148-9, III 268: the *tuikanokubolu* f. derived from, I 144, 149, 432-3, II 186, III 189, 193-4
- Tuikanokubolu* (Tonga): as "acting man" of *tuitonga*, I 164: appointing chiefs? III 187, cf. 189, 190, 194-5, 209-10, 268: assassinated if despotic, III 266, cf. I 158, III 208: chief of the Ngata group, III 188-9, 193: connection, etc. with the *tuihaatakalaia*, *see under Tuihaatakalaia*: and council of chiefs, II 477-8, 480, cf. III 119-20: council meeting summoned by, II 476: daughter of, principal wife of *tuitonga*, II 185-7, III 369, cf. I 152, 153, 161: divine descent, III 65-6: a family title, I 145, 149, 150, cf. 432-3, 435: and food controller, III 325: and god Tali-y-tubu, III 35, 76: head chief of Hihifo, I 132, 133, 160, cf. III 268-9, *see also* Uvea, I 369-70: inauguration, I 132, III 76, 186-7, 188-9, 190-4: increase of power, I 147-8, 149-50, 155-8, 165, III 266: kissing feet of *tuitonga* *feine*, II 193, 198: labour due to? II 383: and land, III 266, 268, 269, 231: lists of, referred to, I 136, 144, 145, 146-7, 160, III 66: making peace, I 164, III 120: military powers of, I 132, 146, 157, 163-4, 435, III 120: Ngata appointed first *tuikanokubolu*, I 144-5, 149, 433, III 193: Ngata group electing, III 188-9, 191, 193-4: office vacant (decay of system after murder of Tukuaho), I 134, 147, 434: power over life and property, III 118, 119: ruling when *tuihaatakalaia* old, I 146, 435: secular king of Tonga, I 131, 132, 134-5, 144, 146, 147, 149, 157, 163-4, 436: succeeded by member of family, III 370-1, 389, 392, cf. 189-90: succession alternating between *tuihaatakalaia* and, *see under Tuihaatakalaia*: succession (election), I 148, III 186-7, 188-94, cf. I 161, 418: successor nominated by, I 147, III 186, 189, cf. 168, 371: suzerainty barely acknowledged by Finau chiefs, I 154, 168: suzerainty over group, I 157-8, 168, 169, 418, cf. I 132, III 119: tribute due to, III 349, cf. I 169: the Tubu f. furnishing candidates for titles of *tuihaatakalaia* and, I 146, II 185, cf. I 148-9, III 268: *tuitonga* ranking above, I 152-3, 154, 157, 161, 163, 164-5, II 195: *see also* Maaliuaki, Mumui, the Tubu f. etc. Tukuaho, and the Finau chiefs
- Tuimanu'a* (Samoa): abdicating in favour of son, III 215: an *ali'i paia*, III 73, 74, 214, cf. 215: and the *anoalo*, II 444, III 113, 116, 170: association with *tuifiti* and *tuitonga*, I 106, 120, 125, 128, *see also below*: carried, III 73, 74: connection with Aleipata, Safotulafai and Iato, II 84-5: decline of influence over Upolu, etc. I 73, 108, 110, 111, 112: dominance over Samoa, Fiji, etc. I 51, 103, 106-7, 119-20, 128: dominance over Upolu and Savai'i, I 106-8: and the *faleula*, II 452, 469: and Fiji, I 99, 103, 107, 120-1, 128, 129, III 346: Fiti'uta the original home of, I 53, II 157, cf. I 52, 55, III 48: genealogies, etc. referred to, III 63, 388: glance blighting fruits, III 74, 321: and god Saleva'o, 196, cf. 48: "greeted," II 469: kava chewers of, divine origin, I 50, II 470: king of Manu'a, I 45, II 11: not looked at, III 74: and Manono, II 20: Moa the family name of, I 56, 57, 106, III 94, 161-2: Pili marrying daughter of, I 58, 101, III 258: as priest, III 33-4, 38, cf. I 52 and n. 1, III 48, 215, 219: *sa'oualuma* name of family of, II 99, 470: Tangaroa as ancestor of, I 49, 53, 55-6, 122-3, II 157, III 63, 64 n. 2: Tangaroa the god of, I 52 and n. 1, III 215, 219: Tau the seat of later *tuimanu'a*, I 53, 54-5, II 11, 157, cf. I 44, 56, III 48: and Tonga, I 103, 106, cf. 119-20, 128: and Tongan creation myth, I 105, cf. 124: *tuitonga* as, (Tonga), I 103, 120, 128-9, 288: veneration for, III 104
- Ta'e-o-Tangaroa: appointing one son heir and the other priest (orator), I 52 and n. 1, 54, III 48, 58: exchanging tuberless kava for infertile *senga*, I 98, 99: the first *tuimanu'a*, I 51, 100-1, cf. 52, 53, II 333, III 48, 63: going to councils in heaven, I 51: living at Fiti-uta, I 53, cf. 52: and name of Fiti-uta, I 121, cf. 129: preventing sons from fighting, II 333: son of Tangaroa-a-Ui, I 51, 52, 104, III 63: *tuifiti* giving *senga* to, I 99, cf. 104: *tuifiti* married to sister of, I 121, cf. III 346
- title: bound to head of holder, III 214, 226-7, cf. I 50: granted by the House of Three, I 54, cf. 55, II 14, III 171, 175, 176, cf. III 113: granted by Tangaroa f. originally, I 49-50, 55, III 214, 226-7, cf. III 220: granting of, influence of the *anoalo*, III 113: "pillars" of holder of, II 469: succession to, hereditary in family, III 388, cf. II 14, 100-1: succession to, by younger son, I 51, 52-3, 54-5, 100-1, cf. III 215: successor to, appointed by dying chief? II 100-1

W III

31

- Tuitonga*: chiefs related to? I 141–2: not cutting flesh as mourner, III 75: of divine descent, I 148, 162, 164, 167, II 195, 359, III 65: eating pork daily, III 326: not elected? III 119, 186: family name, I 132, 152, 156, 157, 160, III 161: first-fruits, etc. due to, I 142, 143, 144, 167, II 192, III 348, 350–3: and food controller, III 325: food due to (provisions, etc.), I 163, III 117, 349: food-offerings to, discontinued by Finau chiefs, I 162–3, 419, III 351, 352: funeral of, presided over by *tuitonga fefine*, II 196, 197–8: funeral of, taboo on food after, III 326: as god, I 151, 166, 167? III 75, cf. 75–6: god incarnate in, I 151, cf. III 75–6: god represented by, I 158, 162, 167, II 192, III 350: gods living in island belonging to, II 255–6: good crops procured by, I 158, cf. 162–3, III 351: good crops procured by dead *tuitonga*, III 351: governing own district, I 132–3, 157, cf. 158, 418: Hikuleo as ancestor of, I 142, III 65: human sacrifice on account of, I 151: inauguration at Mua, I 163, cf. 164, 166, II 196: not incised, III 75: not inspired, I 162, 419, cf. II 413: killed if despotic, I 143, cf. 153, III 117: land held under, III 230–1, 266, cf. 268–9, *see also* I 142, 143, 144: lists of, referred to, I 136, 142–3, 156, III 65: Mariner's ignorance *re*, II 195: marrying daughter of *tuikanokubolu*, II 185–7, III 369, cf. I 152, 153, 161: Maui as ancestor of, I 142, III 65: Mua the family district of, I 132–3, 157, cf. 163, *see also* Uvea, I 369–70: office hereditary in family, I 148, 418, III 368–9, 389: office passing to son, III 186, 188, 368–9, 389, 392, cf. I 154, 163: office passing to son by principal wife, II 185–6, 188, III 369: power, decline of, I 154–7, 162, 163, 165–6, 418–19, 428, III 266, 351: power over life and property, I 151, III 117: powers in old times, I 151–2: precedence at feasts, I 164: as priest, I 151, 158, 165, 166, 419, III 350, 352: not a priest (Mariner), I 163, cf. III 75: not punishing offender outside his district, I 157: rank depending on relationship to, II 109: ranking above all chiefs, II 359, 360: ranking above *tuikanokubolu*, I 152–3, 154, 157, 161, 163, 164–5, II 195: respect due to, I 151, 154, 155, 161, 164, 166, 419: sacred bowl of, and trial by ordeal, III 14, 15: sacred king of group, I 131, 134–5, 158, 167, cf. 418: sacred and secular power once united in, I 142–4, 164, 165: having Samoan wives, I 142–3, cf. 136, *see also* Tonu-maiepa'a, I 104, II 33: sitting apart, I 147, II 477: sovereignty over group, I 134, cf. 134–5, 155, 164, 167: special language used *re*, III 91, cf. I 165: taboos imposed and removed by, III 326: Tangaroa as ancestor of (Samoa), I 104, 122; (Tonga), I 142: Tangaroa as ancestor of later dynasty of, I 137–40, 142, III 65: pre-Tangaroan dynasty evolved from creeper, I 136–42, III 65: not tattooed, III 75: might be tattooed in Samoa, III 75 *n.* 9: tribute due to? III 347, 349: tribute paid to, by other groups, I 142, 167: the *tuihaatakalaui* f. a branch of line of, I 143–4, 149, 432, II 186, III 65–6, 193: as *tuimanu'a* (Tonga), I 103, 120, 128–9, 288: *tui-manu'a* and *tuititi* associated with, I 106, 120, 125, 128: and *tuitonga fefine* and *tamaha*, II 186–98: unable to depose chiefs, III 208, 209, 266: unharmed in war, I 143–4, 418: war not begun without consent of? III 120, cf. I 159, 165, 418, 419: war (plans) not within province of, I 161–2, 163: wives provided for, I 163, cf. Rotuma (*sou*), I 360: wives of, taboo? III 76, cf. I 72–3
- Kau-ulu-fonua: avenging murder of father, I 143: delegating civil government to brother, I 143–4, 149, cf. 144–5
 - Lau-filitonga: not consecrated at Mua (1827), I 163, 166–7, II 196, 197, cf. 164: conversion to Christianity, I 164, 166: daughter of, ranking above King George, I 165: exile in Vavau and Haapai, I 163, 166, II 196: power limited to right of veto, I 164: return to Tongatabu, I 164: son of Nui-ava, I 163: venerated, I 164, 166: and Viachi's son, II 196–7 (tree, 191)
 - Mau-ulu-beko-tofa: death, I 161: and father's sister, etc. II 193–4, 197 (tree, 191): and *tamaha* Faka Kana, II 197
 - Nuiava: alliance with Finau, and consequent decline of power of the *tuitonga*, I 158–9, 162, 163, 165–6, 419, II 196, III 351: death, II 196: privileges curtailed by the Finau chiefs, I 161–3, 166, III 351–2: as refugee in Haapai, I 160–2, 166, III 351: successors of, I 163–5: and *tamaha* Faka Kana, II 197 (tree, 191): and *tuitonga fefine* (father's sister), II 191, 197: and Viachi, II 195 (tree, 191), cf. II 359–60
 - Paulaho (Bau): ceremony enabling son to eat with, II 254: death, I 154: and father's sister, etc. II 191, 192–3: Fijian name of, I 103, 129: great chiefs sometimes resisting, I 153, III 117, 119: powers, etc. I 152–3, 154: question of succession to, III 368–9, cf. I 154: and *tamaha* Faka Kana, II 197 (tree, 191): would be killed if bad chief, I 153, III 117, 119
 - Takalaua, murder of, I 143
 - Talakaifaiki and Samoa, I 71–3, 143, III 250, 251

INDEX

483

- *fefine* (Tonga): compared with the *taupou*, II 188–9: daughter of *tuitonga* by *tuikanokubolu* wife, II 186, 187: divine nature of, II 187: father's sister of *tuitonga*? (Tineh), II 193–4, 197, cf. III 319: father's sister's daughter? (Nana-Tchi), II 196–7: having lovers, II 187: Mariner's ignorance *re*, II 194–5: presiding at funeral of *tuitonga*, II 196, 197–8: “purification” of, at inauguration of *tuitonga*, II 111–12, 113, III 216, 369: rank of daughter of, still higher, II 187, *see also* *Tamaha*: ranking above father or brother, II 187, 189: ranking as queen, II 191 (Tineh), 196 (Nana-Tchi): title passing to sister, II 197: transmitting rank to her children, II 187: and the *tuitonga* of different generations, II 187–8, 190, 194, 196–7: *tuitonga*, etc. kissing feet of, II 193, cf. 187
- Tukuaho (Finau Tukuaho), Tonga: ascendancy, I 155–8, 165: assassination of, I 158–9, cf. 150, 165, 169, III 208–9: commander-in-chief, etc. I 156, 157: district of Hihifo under, I 132, 133: Eua Is. governed by, I 155, 169: and father's sister's rights, II 112–13, III 371: of the Finau f. I 155: son of Mumui, I 146, 147, 150, 155, 157, 169, 434: successors of, I 147, 159–60, 434: as suzerain chief, I 157, 158, 168–9, cf. 154: *tuikanokubolu*, I 146, 147, 150, 157, 169, 434
- Tulafale, *see* Councillors (Samoa)
- Tulī (snipe), association with Tangaroa, I 104, 105
- Tuna and Fata, *see* Fata and Tuna
- Tupa'i (Samoa): brother of So'oa'e, I 76: and the concentration of the four titles, I 78, 79: high priest of Nafanu'a, I 78, 79
- Tupu-o-Rongo (Aitutaki): descent from Maro-una and Ru woman, I 286: descent from Ruatapu, I 287, 288, 289, 293: founder of the *ariki* families, I 286, 291–2, 293: marrying descendant of Taruia, I 286 and 287, 288, 289, 291–2, 293: marrying woman of Ru group, I 287, cf. 286, 288, 289, 293
- Tupu-title, *see under* Chiefs, terms, etc.
- Turanga (Mangaia): god of the Tongan clan, I 259, II 272, 273: incarnate in lizard, II 272, 273: priest of, I 259, II 426: worshipped at Aumoana, II 43, 272 and *n. 2*: worshippers not killed in area of? II 43
- Turban: chief's title bound to head by, (Samoa), III 214, 226: god-eel resenting the wearing of, (Tonga), II 258: as royal insignia (Manu'a), I 54–5: wearing of, sign of defiance (Tonga), II 258: worn in battle by worshippers of Fe'e (Samoa), II 320: worn by sacred king at kava drinking (Fiji), I 346
- Turmeric: cloth offering to god smeared with, in illness (Tikopia), II 300, cf. III 339 *n. 1*: *sou* smeared with, after dying god feasts (Rotuma), III 337, 338–9, *see also* god-rocks smeared red, II 289
- Turtle: born of woman (Samoa, Tingilau), II 230, 245: not caught? (Easter Is.), II 297: ceremonies before catching (Marquesas), II 282, 310, III 36–7, 129: ceremonies connected with, involving continence (Paumotu), II 286, cf. Marquesas, II 282, III 37: coming of, revealed to priest (Paumotu), II 287: cooked, etc. near king's house (Fotuna), II 293: cooked at *marae*, II ? 286–7, 310 (Paumotu); 269, 310 (Society); 295, 310 (Tongareva): cooked by men (New Hebrides), II 303: cooked at sacred fire (Rarotonga), II 277, 311: derived from head of goddess (Tonga), II 254–5, 260: due to council or chiefs (Samoa), II 244: due to king, II 277–8, 311 (Aitutaki); 292–3, 312 (Fotuna); 294, 312 (Funafuti); 277, 311 (Mangaia); 286, 312 (Paumotu); 296, 312 (Rakahanga); 277, 311 (Rarotonga); 289, 312 (Rotuma): not eaten (Manihiki), II 295, cf. Tikopia, II 298: not eaten by chiefs (Tikopia), II 298: eaten by chiefs, etc. only, II 294, 312 (Funafuti); 303 (New Hebrides); 286, 312 (Paumotu); 277, 311 (Rarotonga); 269, 270, 311 (Society); 255, 260, 311 (Tonga); 295, 312 (Tongareva): not eaten by commoners, II 286 (Paumotu); 269, 311 (Society); cf. Tonga, II 254–5, 311: eaten by common people of other clans (Tikopia), II 298: eaten by man who caught it? II 287 (Paumotu); cf. Funafuti, II 294, and Samoa, II 229: eaten at *marae*, II 286 (Paumotu); 269, 310 (Society): not eaten at *marae*? (Tongareva), II 295: eating of, inaugurating man as chief? (Tongareva), II 295: fasting observed before turtle-feast (Paumotu), II 286: fed and tamed (Samoa), II 230: given to king at *fono* (Samoa), II 244: as god or incarnation, II 302 (Duff); 295 (Manihiki); 288 (Rotuma); 221, 224–5, 240, 248 (Samoa); 298, 300 (Tikopia); 252, 254 (Tonga): god, mock human sacrifice on eating of (Samoa), II 248: head due to king (Paumotu), I 336, II 80, 286, 287, 312; (Samoa), II 243, 311: kept in pool, II 302 (Ongtong Java); 286 (Paumotu), *see also* Easter Is. II 397: king bearing name of, (Marquesas), II 282: king wearing insignia at turtle-ceremony, II 293 (Fotuna); 286, 433 (Paumotu); cf. Funafuti, II 294: (part) offered to gods (before feast), II 286, cf. 287, 310 (Paumotu); 277, 311 (Rarotonga); 269, 270, 310, 311, 313 (So-

- ciety); 255, 260, 311, 313 (Tonga); 295, 310, 312 (Tongareva): persons eating, sacred during day (Paumotu), II 287: persons eating, without chief's leave, falling ill (Rotuma), II 289, 312: portions due to chiefs, etc. II 243, 244, 311 (Samoa); 255, 311 (Tonga): religious ceremonies at turtle feast (king important), II 293, 310 (Fotuna); 294, 310 (Funafuti); 286-7, 310, III 71 (Paumotu); 294-5, 310 (Tongareva): sacred, II 282, cf. 284 (Marquesas); 291 (Niue): not sacred? (Ongtong Java), II 302: sanctity of, and privilege of eating, II 310-15: symbol of religious supremacy (Rarotonga), I 269, 429: taboo on, removed before killing, etc. II 293, 310 (Fotuna); 294 (Funafuti); 287 (Paumotu); 294-5 (Tongareva): taboo to whole island formerly (Tikopia), II 298: watch towers for, (Easter Is.) II 297: women not eating, (Tongareva), II 294, 295: no women at killing, etc. ceremonies (Funafuti), II 294: women turning into, II 291 (Rotuma); 230 (Samoa)
- Tutaha (Tahiti), *see under* Attahuru
- Tutapu (Society): a chief of Hiva (Ra'iatea), I 234-5, 267: living at Paaa, Tahiti, I 234, 267: and origin of Tinomana name, I 275: quarrel with Tangiia, I 234, 235, 267-8, III 291: relationship to Tangiia, I 267: Rongo-ma-Uenga the god of, I 268
- Tu-tarangi: ancestor of Pa f. (Rarotonga), I 272: islands conquered by, I 33: Polynesians in Fiji in time of, I 32
- Tutavake, god of Iro, I 272
- Tu-te-rangiatea: and Ra'iatea *marae*, I 218-19, II 62: and voyages of discovery, I 35
- Tu-te-rangi-marama, I 21
- Tutuila (Samoa): not concerned with *ta-fa'ifa* titles, I 82: districts, I 42: the *faletele* and Taema, etc. II 453-4: first inhabitants, I 48-9: governmental centres, I 44: "greeting" of all Samoa not mentioning, II 464: "king" of, not glancing at fruit trees, III 74, 75, 321: man evolving from vine, etc. in, I 90 *and n.* 5, 123-4, 125-6, 129, 138, 139, cf. 100, *see also* Tonga, I 136-42
- Twins, king giving royal name to, (Easter Is.), I 398
- Ui the blind, *see* Kui
- Ui-te-Rangiora, I 35-6, 218, 233
- Ulietea, *see* Ra'iatea
- Union Islands, *see* Tokelau
- Upolu: areas, I 40, 42, 43, 44-6: creation myths, I 47, 48-9, 96, 123-4: division among sons of Pili, I 58-9, 106, III 250, 258, 321: division of land by Ationgie, I 65, III 249-50, 258: founded by sons of Pili (Manu'ans), I 58-9: founded by Tongans, I 59: gods of, not known in Tonga, I 115: kingdoms, I 40, 45: man evolving from vine, etc. in, I 90 *and n.* 5, 123-4, 125-6, 129, 138, 139, cf. 100, *see also* Tonga, I 136-42: Manu'a dominating, I 106-8: Manu'an influence over, decline, I 73, 108, 110, 111, 112: *marae* in, meeting-place of gods, I 49, 96, 127: origin of name, etc. I 48-9: pre-Tangaroans in, I 68, 88, 92-4, 125-8: and the Tongan invaders, I 70-2, 73, cf. 121: *see also* Aana, etc.
- Usoali'i*, *see under* Councils of chiefs (Samoa)
- Utatakienna (Atiu): arrival of, and flight of Tutuaiva, I 295, 298: descendant acquiring power over Mauke and Mitiaro, I 295, 298, 299: descendant marrying woman of rival line, I 295, 298, III 69: descendants kings of Atiu till modern times, I 295-6, 298, III 69: descent from Atea, III 69: descent from Tangaroa, I 295, 298: descent from Te-Erui, I 295, 298 *and n.* 1, III 69: establishing rule, I 295, III 69: living at Mokoero, I 295
- Uvea (Loyalty): aborigines, area, I 415, cf. 417: aborigines Melanesian, I 415: absence of chiefs' language, I 416-17: native names for, I 415, 416: Polynesian language in Uvea district, I 416: Tongan colonists, I 415, cf. 417: Wallis Is. group in, I 415, 416, 417
- (Wallis Is.): constitution similar to that of Tonga, I 372: districts of same names as those of Tongatabu, I 369-70, 421, II 54: Karika and, I 266: *malo* party, I 370, 371, 425, III 205: three groups (in own areas), I 370, 371-2, II 54: tributary to Tonga, I 142, 167
- — kings: belonging to 1st family of the *malo*, I 370, 371-2, III 205: consulting council, I 370, II 496, III 135: dual kingship? I 370-2, 421: election of, III 205-6: governing with two military chiefs, I 370: imposing taboos, I 371: labour due to, I 371: list of, I 372: not looked at, III 88: making peace and war, I 371, III 135: nominating *kivalu*, III 206: powers of life and death, I 370-1: presiding at assemblies, etc., I 371: right to subjects' property, I 371: succession to office, I 370, cf. 371-2, III 382-3
- — the *kivalu*: able to oppose king's veto, I 371: actual administrator, I 370, 371, 372: belonging to 2nd family of *malo*, I 370, 371-2, III 205: inaugurating the king, III 205-6: nominated by king, III 206: succession to office, III 382
- Va'asiliifiti (Samoa), I 62-3, 66, 67
- Vaiari chiefs, *see* the Teva, Vaiari chiefs
- Vaitupu (Ellice group), I 377, 378, 380

INDEX

485

- Vasu (fahu)*, II 176–7 (Fiji), 180, 182 and *n.* 3 (Tonga)
- Vatea, *see* Atea
- Vavau (Wawau): name associated with “Rarotongans,” I 20: name connected with Maori paradise, I 20: as name for Borabora, I 214
- Vehiatua chiefs (Tahiti): chiefs of Teahupoo, I 176, 178 *n.* 5, 186, 192, 228 *n.* 1: effort to secure independence from Papara, I 192, 193–4, 195–6, 202–3, *cf.* II 341–2: great chiefs, I 178: heads of the Outer Teva, I 192: *marae*, *see* *Marae* of Tautira, Tahiti: Pomare chiefs related to, I 195: Pomare’s son succeeding, I 201 and *n.* 4, *cf.* 195: relationship to Papara chiefs, I 186: sometimes stronger than Papara chiefs, I 186, II 40, *cf.* I 202–3: tattoo mark, II 323: Tutaha’s attempt to crush, I 196–7 — (of early date), driving out Tautira chief, I 177 *n.* 1, 186, *cf.* 176–7 — (contemporary of Amo, etc.): death, I 197: at war with Amo, I 192, 193, 194, II 341–2 — (friend of Spaniards): power to banish offenders, III 19–20: relative positions of Pomare I and, I 197: succeeded by brother, III 376: succeeding to father’s title, I 197
- Viachi (Tonga): chief of district, II 193–4: deferring to inspired priest, II 413: divine descent, II 195, 359: father’s sister’s son of *tuitonga*, II 195 (tree, 191): Mariner’s ignorance *re*, II 195, 359–60: person sacred, II 196: respect due from *tuitonga* to son of, II 196–7: son of Tineh (*tuitonga fefine*), II 193: *tuitonga* kissing feet of, II 196
- Vine, man evolving from (pre-“Tangaroans”), Samoa, I 90 and *n.* 5, 100, 123–4, 125–6, 129, 138, 139, *cf.* Tonga, I 136–42, III 65
- Volcano cult: and the dual people, I 7, 302–3, *cf.* 95: and pre-kava element in Marquesas, I 302–3: and the pre-Tangaroans, I 95 *n.* 2: *see also* *gods* Mau’i and Fe’e
- Walls: fortress wall of Manono (Samoa), III 253: of stones (Marquesas), III 297, 299; (Rotuma), III 308, 309; (Samoa), II 35, III 249–51, 252–4: of stones and earth (Society), III 278–9
- War: asperging of warriors before, (Samoa), II 239: challenges, III 156 (Marquesas, Tonga): chief important during (Marquesas), I 319, III 128, 130, 131; (Samoa), III 100, 103, 107: commander-in-chief, the *hata* (Tonga), I 146, 150–1, *cf.* 156: commander-in-chief, the king? (Paumotu), III 132, *cf.* 204: commander-in-chief, secular king (Fiji), I 346, 420; (Tonga), I 157, 163–4, *cf.* 132, 146, 435; *see also* Easter Is. I 395, 405: consultation of gods, etc. before, II 290, 438 (Rotuma); 425 (Society): councils of, *see under* Councils of chiefs, *also* under Council meetings: the “cutting of the cord of union” (Tahiti), II 343, *cf.* 347–8: emblem of Oro given to combatants (Tahiti), II 343: emblems of gods worn, etc. by worshippers (Samoa), II 319–20: father’s sister, etc. deciding *re*, (Samoa), II 104: fighting on sacred ground taboo (Tonga), II 340: human sacrifice connected with, (Mangaia), I 256, II 348 and *n.* 1; (Society), I 223, II 343, 419: importance of inspired persons in, (Society) II 419, *see also* *Alataua* orator-chiefs (Samoa): king commanding during, (Marquesas), III 130, 131: king declaring, etc. (Mangareva), III 132; (Samoa), III 103; (Uvea), I 371, III 135: king (secular) declaring, Tonga, III 120: king, priests and chiefs deciding *re*, (Society), II 483, *cf.* 484, III 124–5: messengers, *see under* Messengers: mustering of forces (Tahiti), II 342, *cf.* Samoa, II 330: orator-priests deciding *re*, (Samoa), III 48–9, 104: prayers during, *see* *Alataua* and prayers during war: priest deciding *re*, (Samoa), III 40, *cf.* Marquesas, I 310, Society, II 419: sacred king not advising *re*, (Tonga), I 161–2, 163: sacred king fastening girdle on warriors before (Mangaia), I 251: sacred king not fighting, I 346, 420 (Fiji); 256 (Mangaia): sacred king formerly engaging in? (Rotuma), I 359, II 403: sacred king not leading in, Easter Is., I 397, 402, 403: sacred king raising taboo on life (Mangaia), I 256, 419, II 347–8, *cf.* I 165, *see also* Tonga, *tuitonga*, I 159, 165, 418, III 120: sacred king safe in, (Tonga), I 143–4, 418: secondary sacred chief not safe in, (Mangaia), I 256: scouts and sentinels (Society), II 422, 423: sister’s son’s privileges during, *see under* Sister’s son: time fixed by priest, etc. (Marquesas), I 310; (Society), II 419: *see also* *Alataua*, etc.; Avenging death of relation; Conch shell; Divination; and Omens
- allies and supporters: adopted persons (Hervey), II 346, III 287, 306–7, 379: “brother” villages? (Samoa), I 85, 423, II 336–8, *see also* *Alataua* and *ituau*: chief’s relations (Aitutaki), I 284, II 346; (Mangareva), I 334–5, II 352; (New Hebrides), II 354; (Samoa), II 330, 331; (Society), II 342–3: chief’s wife’s relations (Samoa), II 135, 157–9, 330–1, 334–5, *cf.* Mangaia, II 349, husband protecting wife’s relations: colonist branches (Samoa), II 5, 331: councillors as warriors, *see under*

- Councillors: dependents attached to clan (Hervey), II 119–20: district chiefs followed by own people, II 342 (Tahiti); 39, 339, 383, cf. 382 (Tonga): fit persons conscripted (Tonga), II 339: group summoned by head chief (Marquesas), I 317, 321; (Tahiti), I 177, II 341–2, 485–6, 487–8: group summoned by suzerain (Marquesas), I 317, 320, 322, II 48; (Tahiti), II 342: head chief supported by group (Marquesas), I 317, II 350; (Samoa), I 423, II 11, 330, III 100, 103, cf. II 85–6, 335–6: king supported by chiefs (Tonga), II 339: military service due from sub-landholders (Society), III 276, 286–7; (Tonga), II 339, III 266; cf. Rarotonga, II 394, III 290: visitors fighting for host (Tonga), II 339 and *n.* 8: *see also* individual supported by tribe, etc., II 351 (Marquesas); 352 (Paumotu); cf. Samoa, II 331, Tahiti, II 344; and *also* members of clan defending each other (Mangaia), I 258, II 43, 138, 346, cf. Samoa, II 85–6, 126, 335–6
- conquered party, etc.: conquered chief not killed (Tahiti), I 185: conquered warriors marrying into and serving victor's clan (Hervey), II 119–20, cf. 139: enemies burnt alive (Mangaia), I 260: enemies killed and eaten (Mangaia), I 257, 259, cf. II 348; (Paumotu), I 336: goods seized by victors (Samoa), I 86: land, *see under* Land of conquered party: prisoners, ears thrown to sacred eel? (Tahiti), II 268: prisoners, sacrificed (Society), II 419: prisoners, set adrift (Tonga), III 15–16: prisoners used as slaves, *see under* Slaves: slain, heads cut off (Samoa), II 305: vanquished family head yielding name to protector (*pro forma*), (Samoa), II 8: women and children kept as slaves, II 402 (Niue); 400 (Paumotu): women taken by victors (Aitutaki), I 282–3; (Samoa), I 86, II 371, cf. I 72–3; *see also under* Land, of conquered party
- not shedding related blood, etc.: “clan” inter-marriages and war taboos (Marquesas), II 350–1: fighting between families prevented by village council (Samoa), II 447, cf. 333, III 3: fighting between neighbours permissible at annual feast (Samoa), II 333: fighting, etc. between relations displeasing to gods, II 346, cf. 347–8 (Mangaia); 333 (Samoa); ? 343–4 (Society); ? 340–1 (Tonga); 354 (Tikopia): fighting between villages settled by district capital? (Samoa), III 101, 106: fighting within area quelled by whole area (Samoa), I 46, 424, III 3, 4: head chief and internal conflicts (Samoa), II 330, 333, III 3, 103: inter-“clan” fighting (Easter Is.), I 386; (Mangaia), I 259, 261, 262, II 44, 138: inter-“clan” fighting, defeated section losing clanship (Mangaia), II 139–40: killing of fellow-worshipper a sin (Mangaia), II 346, 347, cf. 347–8: killing of fellow-worshippers permissible in war (Mangaia), II 346, 347: killing within group, II 355: no killing within tribe (Marquesas), II 351: murder within tribe, a crime (Niue), II 353: neighbours fighting on opposite sides not facing each other (Samoa), II 333: relations fighting on opposite sides, II 331–2 (Samoa); 339–40 (Tonga): relations not fighting (Samoa), II 332–3: relations going safely to enemy camps (Marquesas), II 350, *see also under* Sister's son: relations not killed in war (Marquesas), II 350
- War-gods: each district having (Samoa), II 407: each god the war-god of its worshippers? *see* Nafanua, Pava, Taisumalie, etc. (Samoa), II 241–2: national war-gods (Samoa), II 407: *see also under names of gods*
- Water: (and coconut-water, etc.) as conductor of taboo, *see under* Taboo: created by Tane (Tahiti), I 244
- Wawau, *see* Vavau
- Weapons, designs on, representing names, II 326 (Marquesas); cf. 327 (Niue)
- Weather, *see* Rain and Wind
- Wedding ceremonies: cloth with blood of the mothers-in-law given to bride (Society), II 116: presents shared by mother's brother and father of bride (Tikopia), II 211: Tane prayed to, at (Paumotu), I 340
- Wells (Rotuma), III 310
- Whales: due to head chief (Rarotonga), I 268: offerings to, (Tonga), II 253: originally human (Marquesas), II 307: sacred, not killed (Tonga), II 253: spirits returning in form of, (Tonga), II 253, 306: swallowing land and people (Hervey), II 274: swallowing Niue woman, I 351
- Whales' teeth: gods immanent in (Samoa), II 221; (Tonga), II 252, cf. I 148, 256: as war omens (Samoa), II 250: worshipped (Samoa), II 250
- Whenua-haere, I 35, 218
- Widowers: pushed out of house as corpse carried out (Rotuma), II 122: stranger widower remaining with wife's family (Rarotonga), II 120
- Widows: despoiled and evicted (Paumotu), III 303, cf. 304: fed by sons inheriting (Funafuti), III 383: head-covering worn by, (Ongtong Java), II 302: holding land for life (Funafuti), III 383: mourning by, (Ongtong Java) II 308: strangled (Fiji), I 346: strangling of widow of sacred king taboo (Fiji), I 346

INDEX

487

- Wife: going to husband's family (Rarotonga), II 120: going to husband's family (higher classes), (Rotuma), II 122: and husband, term for (Fotuna), II 207: lending of, *see* Lending wives: marrying deceased husband's brother (Samoa), II 125: relationship between wives of two brothers (Tikopia), II 210: same term for either spouse (Tonga), II 178: terms for, II 205 (Niue); 204 (Paumotu); 148–9 (Samoa); 198 (Society); 209 (Tikopia): terms for, according to rank (Samoa), III 90
- Wife's brother: avoidances between husband and, (Tikopia), II 212: husband protecting, (Mangaia), II 349: sometimes marrying husband's sister (Samoa), II 125, 129: term for, applied to sister's husband (Tonga), II 181, cf. Tikopia, II 210
- brother's daughter, secondary wife to husband (Samoa), II 161, 171
 - — descendants, not marrying husband's sister's descendants (Samoa), II 125, 129
 - father: avoidances between husband and, (Tikopia), II 212: called "father," II 209, 210 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga): and husband's father, term for (Tikopia), II 210
 - mother: avoidances between husband and (Tikopia), II 212: called "mother," II 209, cf. 210 (Tikopia); 178 (Tonga)
 - sister: husband's right to, II 121 (Marquesas); 142 (Niue): marriage with deceased wife's sister (Samoa), II 125: as secondary wife (Samoa), II 161, cf. I 64 (Lafai, etc.), and I 75–6 (Sanalala): sometimes marrying husband's brother (Samoa), II 125, 129: — and sister's husband, and husband's brother, etc. (Tikopia), II 210
 - sister's husband, a "brother" (Tonga), II 179
- Wills: III 164–9: adopted son unable to nominate own relation (Samoa), III 367: binding nature of, III 169 (Marquesas); 166, 167, 224–5 (Samoa); 168 (Tahiti): carried out from fear of deceased (Samoa), III 166, 224–5: chief confirming, etc. (Mangaia), III 202: chief nominating heir, III 169 (Bukabuka); 169 (Fotuna); 168–9 (Hervey); ? 380 (Mangareva); 144–6, 165, 166, 167, 180, 224–5, 366, cf. I 52, II 100–1, 134 (Samoa); 168, 372, 373 (Society); 168, cf. Josiah, I 147 (Tonga); 169 (Uvea): chief nominating heir likely to be favoured by council (Samoa), III 166, 179, 367–8: chief's nomination confirmed or disregarded, III 168–9, 202, 378 (Hervey); 168, 186 (Tonga): chief's nomination generally confirmed, III 166 (Samoa); 189, cf. 168, 371 (Tonga); *see also* Uvea, III 169: chief's nomination standing, but council deposing evil heir (Samoa), III 181–2: confirmation of chief's nomination necessary (Samoa), II 15; ? (Tahiti), III 168: council not always sanctioning chief's nomination (Samoa), III 165, 178, cf. 365: dying man transmitting powers to heir? (Samoa, Tahiti), III 223–5, cf. II 419–20, III 165–6, 168: family appointing heir if no will made (Samoa), III 181: family head nominating heir (Samoa), III 165, 166, 167, 176, 181, 224–5: family head's nomination confirmed by family (Samoa), III 166, 176?, 181: family head's nomination might be disregarded (Samoa), III 179: father nominating heir (Samoa), III 365–6, cf. II 107: importance of nomination by chief (Samoa), III 367, cf. II 134: individuals bequeathing crops (Rotuma), III 311, 312–13: individuals bequeathing land, etc., III 169, 315, 383 (Funafuti); 169 (Niue); cf. Rotuma, III 169, 310, 312, 313, Society, III 374: king's "will" influencing electors (Tonga), III 168, 186, 188: nomination of chief indicating will of god? III 224–5: term for (Samoa), III 166: will of Anua Motua (Paumotu), *see under* Anua Motua: will of Ationgie (Samoa), *see under* Ationgie: will of Hotumatua (Easter Is.), I 388–9, III 383: will of Lealali (Samoa), I 61, III 172: will of Pili (Samoa), I 58–9, III 172: will of Va'siliifiti (Samoa), I 67, cf. 63
- Wind: created by Tane (Tahiti), I 244: king controlling, (Tahiti), III 327, cf. Fotuna, III 340: rocks raising tempest (Rotuma), II 289
- Women, island inhabited solely by, (Marquesas), II 283
- World, origin of man and, *see under place names*
- Yams: Alo-alo invoked at ripening of (Tonga), II 412: as clan *atua* (Tikopia), II 299, 300–1: ends of leaves of, emblems of god (Samoa), II 228: first-fruits offered to sacred king (Easter Is.), I 394, III 362; (Tonga), III 350–3: origin (born of goddess), Tonga, II 258, 260: planting of, and individual rights (Niue), III 304, 305: tabooed before feast (Fotuna), III 340
- "Year," a six-months period (Rotuma), III 335, 338